

English Equiv of WO 01/32649

(13) A1

(86) Date de dépôt PCT/PCT Filing Date: 2000/10/24	(51) Cl.Int. ⁷ /Int.Cl. ⁷ C07D 401/04, A61K 31/4545, A61K 31/454, A61K 31/4523, A61P 9/14, A61P 37/08, A61P 11/06, C07D 495/04, C07D 471/04, C07D 417/04, C07D 333/00, C07D 239/00, ...
(87) Date publication PCT/PCT Publication Date: 2001/05/10	(71) Demandeur/Applicant: BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM PHARMA KG, DE
(85) Entrée phase nationale/National Entry: 2002/04/15	(72) Inventeurs/Inventors: RUDOLF, KLAUS, DE; EBERLEIN, WOLFGANG, DE; ENGEL, WOLFHARD, DE; DOODS, HENRI, DE; HALLERMAYER, GERHARD, DE; BAUER, ECKHART, DE
(86) N° demande PCT/PCT Application No.: EP 2000/010463	(74) Agent: FETHERSTONHAUGH & CO.
(87) N° publication PCT/PCT Publication No.: 2001/032649	
(30) Priorité/Priority: 1999/10/29 (199 52 146.8) DE	

(54) Titre : ARYLALCANES, ARYLALKENES ET ARYL-AZA-ALCANES, COMPOSITION MEDICAMENTEUSE RENFERMANT CES COMPOSES ET LEUR PROCÉDE DE PREPARATION

(54) Title: ARYLALKANES, ARYLALKENES AND ARYL-AZAALKANES, PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS CONTAINING THESE COMPOUNDS AND PROCESSES FOR PREPARING THEM

(57) Abrégé/Abstract

The invention relates to compounds of general formula $R-Z^1-Z^2-Z^3-R^1$ wherein R, R^1 and Z^1-Z^3 are defined as in Claim 1, the tautomers thereof, diastereomers thereof, enantiomers thereof, mixtures and salts thereof, especially the physiologically compatible salts thereof with inorganic or organic acids and bases, exhibiting valuable pharmacological properties, especially CGRP antagonistic properties. The invention also relates to medicaments containing the above-mentioned compounds, the use thereof and method for the production thereof.

(51) Cl.Int.⁷/Int.Cl.⁷ (suite/continued) C07D 221/00, C07D 409/14, C07D 401/14, C07D 205/085, C07D 211/58

77648fft

BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM PHARMA KG

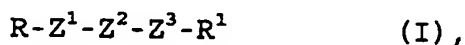
D-55216 Ingelheim

Case 5/1278-Ro

Foreign filing text

Arylalkanes, arylalkenes and aryl-azaalkanes, pharmaceutical compositions containing these compounds and processes for preparing them

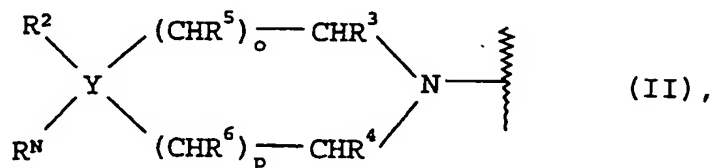
The present invention relates to compounds of general formula



the tautomers, the diastereomers, the enantiomers, the mixtures thereof and the salts thereof, particularly the physiologically acceptable salts thereof with inorganic or organic acids or bases, pharmaceutical compositions containing these compounds, their use and processes for preparing them.

In the above general formula I

R denotes the H_2N group or the group of formula



wherein

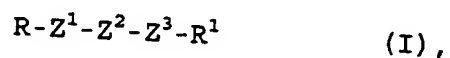
o denotes the number 1 or, if Y does not denote a nitrogen atom, also denotes the number 0,

p denotes the number 1 or, if Y does not denote a nitrogen atom, also denotes the number 0,

- 187 -

Abstract

The present invention relates to compounds of general formula



wherein

R, R¹ and Z¹ to Z³ are defined as in claim 1, the tautomers, the diastereomers, the enantiomers, the mixtures thereof and the salts thereof, particularly the physiologically acceptable salts thereof with inorganic or organic acids or bases, which have valuable pharmacological properties, particularly CGRP-antagonistic properties, pharmaceutical compositions containing these compounds, their use and processes for preparing them.

- 2 -

Y denotes the carbon atom or, if Y is not linked to a heteroatom, may also denote the nitrogen atom,

R^2 denotes a pair of free electrons, if Y denotes the nitrogen atom, or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, denotes the hydrogen atom or an alkyl group with 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

R^3 and R^4 denote hydrogen atoms or together denote an alkylene bridge with 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

R^5 and R^6 denote hydrogen atoms or together denote a one- to three-membered unbranched alkylene bridge wherein a methylene group may be replaced by a methylimino group,

R^N denotes a saturated, mono- or diunsaturated 5- to 7-membered aza, diaza, triaza, oxaza, thiaza, thiadiazia or S,S-dioxido-thiadiazia heterocycle,

wherein the abovementioned heterocycles may be linked via a carbon or nitrogen atom and

adjacent to a nitrogen atom may contain a carbonyl, thioxo or iminocarbonyl group or two carbonyl groups or a carbonyl group and a thioxo or iminocarbonyl group, wherein the abovementioned iminocarbonyl groups may be substituted by a cyano group or by an alkoxycarbonyl group with 1 to 4 carbon atoms in the alkyl moiety,

may be substituted at one of the nitrogen atoms by an alkanoyl, hydroxycarbonylalkyl or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group,

may be substituted at one or two carbon atoms by a branched or unbranched alkyl group, by a phenyl, phenylmethyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, pyridinyl, diazinyl, furyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, 1,3-oxazolyl, 1,3-thiazolyl, isoxazolyl, pyrazolyl, 1-methylpyrazolyl, imidazolyl or 1-methylimidazolyl group, wherein the substituents may be identical or different,

wherein additionally an unbranched alkylene group with 3 to 6 carbon atoms may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or the group $=CH-S-CH=$ may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered saturated heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or

an olefinic double bond of one of the abovementioned unsaturated heterocycles may be fused to a benzene, pyridine, diazine, 1,3-oxazole, thiophene, furan, thiazole, pyrrole, N-methyl-pyrrole, quinoline, imidazole or N-methyl-imidazole ring,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, R^N denotes the hydroxy group, a benzoylamino-carbonylamino group, a phenylamino group optionally substituted at the aniline nitrogen by an aminocarbonyl group or a phenylmethylamino group optionally substituted at the benzylamine nitrogen by an alkoxycarbonyl group,

wherein the phenyl, pyridinyl, diazinyl, furyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, 1,3-oxazolyl, 1,3-thiazolyl, isoxazolyl, pyrazolyl, 1-methylpyrazolyl, imidazolyl or 1-methylimidazolyl groups contained in the groups mentioned under R^N as well as benzo-, thieno-, pyrido-,

diazino- and quinolino-fused heterocycles in the carbon skeleton may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted by fluorine, chlorine or bromine atoms, by alkyl groups, by cycloalkyl groups with 3 to 8 carbon atoms, nitro, alkoxy, alkylthio, alkylsulphinyl, alkylsulphonyl, alkylsulphonylamino, phenyl, phenylalkoxy, trifluoromethyl, alkoxycarbonyl, alkoxycarbonylalkyl, carboxy, carboxyalkyl, dialkylaminoalkyl, hydroxy, amino, acetylamino, propionylamino, cycloalkanecarbonylamino, benzoyl, benzoylamino, benzoylmethylamino, aminocarbonyl, alkylaminocarbonyl, dialkylaminocarbonyl, hydroxyalkylaminocarbonyl, (4-morpholinyl)carbonyl, (1-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl, (1-piperidinyl)carbonyl, (hexahydro-1-azepinyl)carbonyl, (4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)-piperidinyl]carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)-piperidinyl]carbonylamino, methylenedioxy, aminocarbonylamino, aminocarbonylaminoalkyl, alkylaminocarbonylamino, dialkylaminocarbonylamino, aminomethyl, alkanoyl, cyano, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoromethylthio, trifluoromethylsulphinyl or trifluoromethylsulphonyl groups, wherein the substituents may be identical or different and the abovementioned benzoyl, benzoylamino, benzoylaminoaminocarbonylamino and benzoylmethylamino groups may in turn additionally be substituted in the phenyl moiety by a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom, an alkyl, trifluoromethyl, amino or acetylamino group, and the alkyl groups contained in the abovementioned groups, unless otherwise stated, may contain 1 to 5 carbon atoms,

or, if $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ denotes the divalent group $\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}$, R may also denote the 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidiny-1'-yl group,

Z^1 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond,

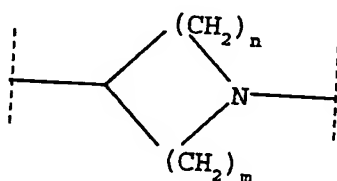
Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_3-$,

wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or a hydroxy group,

one of the groups $-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}$, $-\text{NH}-(\text{CH}_2)_2-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-\text{NH}-$,

wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group and the nitrogen atoms are each linked to a carbonyl group of the groups Z^1 or Z^3 ,

the group $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ or a divalent group of general formula



(III),

wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2, 3 or 4 and

the nitrogen atom is linked to a carbonyl group of the group Z^3 ,

Z^3 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group,

wherein at least one of the groups Z^1 and Z^3 denotes a carbonyl group, and

R^1 denotes a phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, benzimidazolyl, 1,3-dihydro-2-oxobenzimidazolyl, octahydro-9-phenanthryl or benzodioxolanyl group,

wherein the abovementioned aromatic and heteroaromatic groups in the carbon skeleton may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted by fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atoms, by alkyl groups, by cycloalkyl groups with 3 to 8 carbon atoms, phenylalkyl groups, hydroxy, alkoxy, phenyl, phenylalkoxy, trifluoromethyl, alkoxycarbonylalkyl, carboxyalkyl, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxy, dialkylaminoalkyl, amino, aminoalkyl, alkylamino, dialkylamino, acetylamino, propionylamino, benzoyl, benzoylamino, benzoylmethylamino, 4-(dialkylaminoalkyl)-1-piperazinyl, piperidinyl, 4-(1-piperidinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(4-dialkylaminoalkyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl, nitro, methanesulphonyloxy, aminocarbonyl, alkylaminocarbonyl, dialkylaminocarbonyl, alkanoyl, cyano, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoromethylthio, trifluoromethylsulphinyl or trifluoromethylsulphonyl groups and the substituents may be identical or different and the abovementioned benzoyl, benzoylamino and benzoylmethylamino groups may in turn additionally be substituted in the phenyl moiety by a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom or by an alkyl, trifluoromethyl, amino or acetylamino group,

wherein the hydroxy, amino and imidazolyl groups contained in the abovementioned groups may be substituted with protecting

groups well known from peptide chemistry, preferably with the acetyl, benzyloxycarbonyl or tert.butyloxycarbonyl group,

all the abovementioned alkyl and alkoxy groups and the alkyl or alkylene moieties present inside the other groups specified may contain 1 to 7 carbon atoms, unless otherwise stated, and

all the abovementioned cycloalkyl groups and the cycloalkyl groups present inside the other groups specified may contain 5 to 10 carbon atoms, unless otherwise stated.

By the protecting groups mentioned in the preceding definitions are meant the protecting groups familiar from peptide chemistry, especially

a phenylalkoxycarbonyl group with 1 to 3 carbon atoms in the alkoxy moiety optionally substituted in the phenyl nucleus by a halogen atom, by a nitro or phenyl group, by one or two methoxy groups,

for example the benzyloxycarbonyl, 2-nitro-benzyloxy-carbonyl, 4-nitro-benzyloxycarbonyl, 4-methoxy-benzyloxy-carbonyl, 2-chloro-benzyloxycarbonyl, 3-chloro-benzyloxy-carbonyl, 4-chloro-benzyloxycarbonyl, 4-biphenyl- α,α -dimethyl-benzyloxycarbonyl or 3,5-dimethoxy- α,α -dimethyl-benzyloxycarbonyl group,

an alkoxycarbonyl group having a total of 1 to 5 carbon atoms in the alkyl moiety,

for example the methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, n-propoxycarbonyl, isopropoxycarbonyl, n-butoxycarbonyl,

- 8 -

1-methylpropoxycarbonyl, 2-methylpropoxy-carbonyl or
tert.butylloxycarbonyl group,

the allyloxycarbonyl, 2,2,2-trichloro-(1,1-dimethylethoxy)-
carbonyl or 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl group or

the formyl, acetyl or trifluoroacetyl group.

The present invention relates to racemates if the compounds of
general formula I have only one chiral element. However, the
application also includes the individual diastereomeric pairs
of antipodes or mixtures thereof which are obtained if there
is more than one chiral element in the compounds of general
formula (I). Of the compounds that come under general formula
I wherein Z^2 denotes the group $-CH=CH-$, the (E)-configured
diastereomers are preferred.

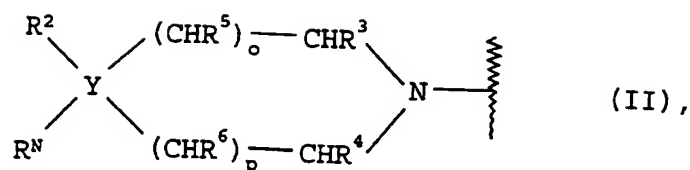
The compounds of general formula (I) have valuable
pharmacological properties, based on their selective CGRP-
antagonistic properties. The invention further relates to
pharmaceutical compositions containing these compounds, their
use and the preparation thereof.

Preferred compounds of the above general formula I are those
wherein

R denotes the H_2N group, if Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group
and R^1 is at least disubstituted by the H_2N group and an
additional substituent or if Z^2 does not contain an imino
group,

or the group of formula

- 9 -



wherein

o , p , R^5 , R^6 and Y are as hereinbefore defined,

R^2 denotes a pair of free electrons, if Y denotes the nitrogen atom, or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, R^2 denotes the hydrogen atom or a methyl group,

R^3 and R^4 denote hydrogen atoms or together denote an alkylene bridge with 2 to 3 carbon atoms,

R^N denotes a monocyclic saturated, mono- or diunsaturated 5- to 7-membered aza, diaza, triaza, oxaza, thiaza, thiadiazia or S,S-dioxido-thiadiazia heterocycle containing one to two imino groups,

wherein the abovementioned heterocycles are linked via a carbon or nitrogen atom and

adjacent to a nitrogen atom contain a carbonyl, thioxo or iminocarbonyl group or two carbonyl groups or a carbonyl group and a thioxo or iminocarbonyl group, wherein the abovementioned iminocarbonyl groups may be substituted by a cyano group or by an alkoxy carbonyl group with 1 to 4 carbon atoms in the alkyl moiety,

the abovementioned heterocycles containing two imino groups may be substituted at one of the imino-nitrogen atoms by an alkanoyl, hydroxycarbonylalkyl or

- 10 -

alkoxycarbonylalkyl group with 1 to 3 carbon atoms in the alkyl moieties;

may be substituted at one or two carbon atoms by an unbranched alkyl group, by a phenyl, phenylmethyl, naphthyl, biphenyl or thienyl group, wherein the substituents may be identical or different,

and wherein additionally an unbranched alkylene group with 3 to 4 carbon atoms may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or the group =CH-S-CH= may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered saturated heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or

an olefinic double bond of one of the abovementioned unsaturated heterocycles may be fused to a benzene, pyridine, diazine, thiophene or quinoline ring,

with the provisos that

(i) R^N does not take on the meaning of the 2,6-dioxo-3-phenyl-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-1H-pyrimidin-3-yl group, the 2-oxo-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-imidazolyl group optionally monosubstituted by an acyl group in the 3 position and the 2(1H)-oxo-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-1-pyrimidinyl group and

(ii) R^1 does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-chlorophenyl or 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-bromophenyl group if R^N takes on the meaning of the 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxobenzimidazol-1-yl, 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-thioxobenzimidazol-1-yl, 2(1H)-oxoquinoxalin-1-yl,

- 11 -

3-oxo-2,3-dihydrobenzoxazin-4-yl, 3-oxo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydrobenz[f][1,4]oxazepin-4-yl or 2(1H)-oxoquinolin-3-yl group,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, with the proviso that

(i) R^1 does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl or naphthyl group or

(ii) Z^2 does not denote a group containing N or

(iii) Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group,

R^N may also represent the hydroxy group

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom and Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group, a benzoylaminocarbonylamino group, a phenylamino group optionally at least monosubstituted at the aniline nitrogen by an aminocarbonyl group and in the phenyl moiety,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group and in the group of general formula (II) o and p each assume the value 1, a phenylmethylamino group optionally at least monosubstituted at the benzylamine nitrogen by a C_{1-4} -alkoxy-carbonyl group and in the phenyl moiety,

wherein the phenyl and thienyl groups contained in the groups mentioned under R^N as well as benzo-, thieno-, pyrido-, diazino- and quinolino-fused heterocycles may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by fluorine, chlorine or bromine atoms,

- 12 -

by methyl groups, by cycloalkyl groups with 5 to 6 carbon atoms, nitro, methoxy, methylthio, methylsulphinyl, methylsulphonyl, methanesulphonylamino, phenyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxycarbonyl, carboxy, hydroxy, amino, acetylamino, cyclohexanecarbonylamino, aminocarbonyl, hydroxyethylaminocarbonyl, (4-morpholinyl)carbonyl, (1-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl, (1-piperidinyl)carbonyl, (hexahydro-1-azepinyl)carbonyl, (4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)-piperidinyl]carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)piperidinyl]-carbonylamino, aminocarbonylamino, alkylaminocarbonylamino, dialkylaminocarbonylamino, aminomethyl, acetyl, cyano or trifluoromethoxy groups, wherein the substituents may be identical or different,

or, if $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ denotes the divalent group $\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}$, R may also denote the 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-1'-yl group,

Z^1 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_3-$,

wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or a hydroxy group,

one of the groups

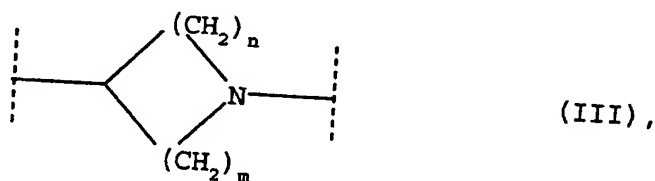
$-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}$, $-\text{NH}-(\text{CH}_2)_2-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-\text{NH}-$,

wherein the nitrogen atoms are each linked to a carbonyl group of the groups Z^1 or Z^3 and

- 13 -

the hydrogen atom of the imino group may in each case be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group,

the group $-CH=CH-$ or, if R^1 does not denote an aromatic or heteroaromatic group substituted by cycloalkyl or phenyl groups or R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on benzene ring, it also denotes a divalent group of general formula



wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2 or 3 and the nitrogen atom is linked to the group Z^3 with the meaning of a carbonyl group,

Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group or, if R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on aromatic or heteroaromatic ring, it also denotes the methylene group,

wherein at least one of the groups Z^1 and Z^3 denotes a carbonyl group and the sequence $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ is at least four-membered, and

R^1 denotes a mono-, di- or trisubstituted phenyl group, a benzimidazolyl, 1,3-dihydro-2-oxobenzimidazolyl, octahydro-9-phenanthryl or benzodioxolanyl group or, if Z^1 and Z^3 each

- 14 -

denote the CO group, R^1 may also denote a 1-naphthyl or 2-naphthyl group,

wherein the abovementioned aromatic and heteroaromatic groups may be mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atoms, by alkyl groups with 1 to 4 carbon atoms, by cycloalkyl groups with 5 to 6 carbon atoms, hydroxy, alkoxy, phenyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, carboxy, amino, aminomethyl, methylamino, dimethylamino, acetylamino, 4-[3-(dimethylaminopropyl)]-1-piperazinyl, piperidinyl, 4-(1-piperidinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-[4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl]-1-piperidinyl, nitro, methanesulphonyloxy, aminocarbonyl, acetyl, cyano or trifluoromethoxy groups and the substituents may be identical or different,

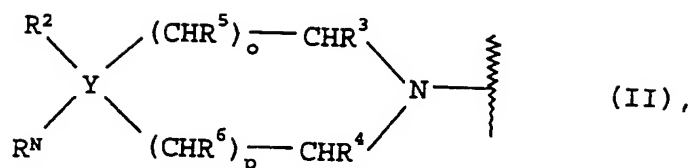
wherein all the abovementioned alkyl and alkoxy groups and the alkyl or alkylene moieties present inside the other groups specified may contain 1 to 5 carbon atoms unless otherwise stated,

the tautomers, diastereomers, enantiomers and salts thereof.

Particularly preferred compounds of the above general formula I are those wherein

R denotes the H_2N group, if Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group and R^1 is at least disubstituted by the H_2N group and an additional substituent or if Z^2 does not contain an imino group, or the group of formula

- 15 -



wherein

o , p and Y are as hereinbefore defined,

R^2 denotes a pair of free electrons, if Y denotes the nitrogen atom, or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, R^2 denotes the hydrogen atom or a methyl group,

R^3 and R^4 denote hydrogen atoms or together denote an alkylene bridge with 2 carbon atoms,

R^5 and R^6 denote hydrogen atoms or together denote an n -propylene bridge wherein the central methylene group may be replaced by a methylimino group,

R^N denotes a monocyclic saturated, mono- or diunsaturated 5- to 7-membered aza, diaza, triaza, thiadiazia or S,S -dioxido-thiadiazia heterocycle containing one to two imino groups,

wherein the abovementioned heterocycles are linked via a carbon or nitrogen atom and

adjacent to a nitrogen atom contain a carbonyl, thioxo or iminocarbonyl group or two carbonyl groups or a carbonyl group and a thioxo or iminocarbonyl group, wherein the abovementioned iminocarbonyl groups may be substituted by a cyano group or by a tert.butoxycarbonyl group,

the abovementioned heterocycles containing two imino groups may be substituted at one of the imino-nitrogen atoms by an acetyl, carboxymethyl or methoxycarbonylmethyl group,

may be substituted at one or two carbon atoms by a methyl group, by a phenyl, phenylmethyl, naphthyl, biphenyl or thienyl group, wherein the substituents may be identical or different,

and wherein additionally an unbranched alkylene group with 4 carbon atoms may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or the group $=CH-S-CH=$ may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered saturated heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or

an olefinic double bond of one of the abovementioned unsaturated heterocycles may be fused to a benzene, pyridine, diazine, thiophene or quinoline ring,

with the provisos that

(i) R^N does not take on the meaning of the 2,6-dioxo-3-phenyl-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-1H-pyrimidin-3-yl group, the 2-oxo-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-imidazolyl group optionally monosubstituted in the 3 position by an acyl group and the 2(1H)-oxo-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-1-pyrimidinyl group, and

(ii) R^1 does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-chlorophenyl or 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-

- 17 -

5-bromophenyl group, if R^N takes on the meaning of the 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxobenzimidazol-1-yl, 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-thioxobenzimidazol-1-yl, 2(1H)oxoquinoxalin-1-yl, 3-oxo-2,3-dihydrobenzoxazin-4-yl, 3-oxo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydrobenz[f][1,4]oxazepin-4-yl or 2(1H)-oxoquinolin-3-yl group,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, with the proviso that

(i) R^1 does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl or naphthyl group or

(ii) Z^2 does not denote a group containing N, or

(iii) Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group,

R^N may also denote the hydroxy group,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom and Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group, a benzoylaminocarbonylamino group, a phenylamino group optionally at least monosubstituted by an aminocarbonyl group at the aniline nitrogen and in the phenyl moiety,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group and in the group of general formula (II) o and p each assume the value 1, a phenylmethylanino group optionally at least monosubstituted by a tert. butoxycarbonyl group at the benzylamine nitrogen and in the phenyl moiety,

- 18 -

wherein the phenyl and thienyl groups contained in the groups mentioned under R^N as well as benzo-, thieno-, pyrido-, diazino- and quinolino-fused heterocycles may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by fluorine, chlorine or bromine atoms, by methyl, nitro, methoxy, methanesulphonylamino, phenyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxycarbonyl, carboxy, hydroxy, amino, acetylamino, cyclohexanecarbonylamino, aminocarbonyl, hydroxyethylaminocarbonyl, (4-morpholinyl)carbonyl, (4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)-1-piperidinyl]carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)piperidinyl]carbonylamino, aminomethyl or aminocarbonylamino groups, wherein the substituents may be identical or different,

or, if $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ denotes the divalent group $CO-CH_2-CH_2-CO$, R may also denote the 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-1'-yl group,

Z^1 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2-$ or $-(CH_2)_3-$,

wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or hydroxy group,

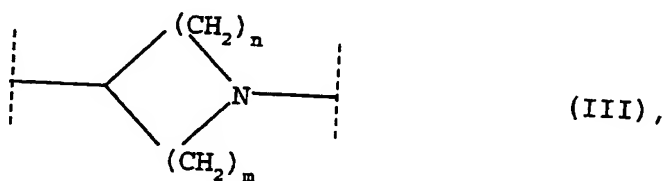
one of the groups

$-NH-CH_2$, $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH-$,

wherein the nitrogen atoms are each linked to a carbonyl group of the groups Z^1 or Z^3 and

the hydrogen atom of the imino group may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group in each case,

the group $-CH=CH-$ or, if R^1 does not denote an aromatic or heteroaromatic group substituted by cycloalkyl or phenyl groups or R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on benzene ring, it may also denote a divalent group of general formula



wherein

m denotes one of the numbers 1 or 2 and n denotes one of the numbers 1, 2 or 3 and the nitrogen atom is linked to the group Z^3 with the meaning of a carbonyl group,

Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group or, if R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on aromatic or heteroaromatic ring, it may also denote the methylene group,

wherein at least one of the groups Z^1 and Z^3 denotes a carbonyl group and the sequence $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ is at least four-membered, and

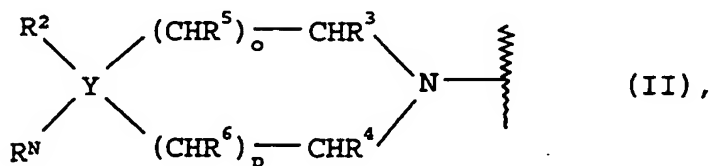
R^1 denotes a monosubstituted phenyl group, a 5-benzimidazolyl, 1,3-dihydro-2-oxobenzimidazol-5-yl, octahydro-9-phenanthryl or 5-benzodioxolanyl group or, if Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group, it may also denote a 1-naphthyl or 2-naphthyl group,

wherein the abovementioned aromatic and heteroaromatic groups may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atoms, by alkyl groups with 1 to 4 carbon atoms, by cyclohexyl, hydroxy, alkoxy groups with up to 3 carbon atoms in the alkyl moiety, phenyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, carboxy, amino, aminomethyl, methylamino, dimethylamino, acetylamino, 4-[3-(dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl, piperidinyl, 4-(1-piperidinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-[4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl, nitro, cyano or trifluoromethoxy groups and the substituents may be identical or different,

the tautomers, diastereomers, enantiomers and salts thereof.

Most particularly preferred compounds of the above general formula I are those wherein

R denotes the H₂N group, if Z¹ and Z³ each denote the CO group and R¹ is at least disubstituted by the H₂N group and an additional substituent or if Z² does not contain an imino group, or R denotes the group of formula



wherein

Y denotes the carbon atom and o and p independently of one another denote the numbers 1 or 0 or

- 21 -

Y denotes the nitrogen atom and o and p each represent the number 1,

R^2 denotes a pair of free electrons, if Y denotes the nitrogen atom, or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, R^2 denotes the hydrogen atom or the methyl group,

R^3 and R^4 denote hydrogen atoms or together denote an ethylene bridge,

R^5 and R^6 denote hydrogen atoms or together denote a $-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)-\text{CH}_2-$ bridge,

R^N denotes a 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-1-yl, 1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxopyrido-[2,3-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 4-phenyl-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 1,3-dihydro-5-methyl-4-phenyl-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxothieno[3,4-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 1,3-dihydro-4-(3-thienyl)-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 2,4-dihydro-5-phenyl-3(3H)-oxo-1,2,4-triazol-2-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxothieno[3,2-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxopyrido[3,4-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxopyrido[4,3-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinolin-3-yl, 2(1H)-oxoquinoxalin-3-yl, 1,1-dioxido-3(4H)-oxo-1,2,4-benzothiadiazin-2-yl, 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxoimidazo[4,5-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 3,4,4a,5,6,7,8,8a-octahydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl, 2,5-dioxo-4-(phenylmethyl)-imidazolidin-1-yl, 2,5-dioxo-4-phenyl-imidazolidin-1-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2,2-dioxido-2,1,3-benzothiadiazin-3-yl, 1,3-dihydro-4-(2-naphthyl)-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 4-(4-biphenyl)-1,3-dihydro-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxoimidazo[4,5-c]quinolin-

- 22 -

3-yl, 2-(dimethylethoxycarbonylamino)-3,4-dihydroquinazolin-3-yl, 2-amino-3,4-dihydroquinazolin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-thioxoquinazolin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-cyanoiminoquinazolin-3-yl, 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2(1H)-oxo-1,3-benzodiazepin-3-yl or 2,4(1H,3H)-dioxoquinazolin-3-yl group or,

if R¹ does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-chlorophenyl or 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-bromophenyl group, may also denote a 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxobenzimidazol-1-yl or 2(1H)-oxoquinolin-3-yl group,

wherein the abovementioned mono- and bicyclic heterocycles containing two imino groups may be substituted at one of the imino-nitrogen atoms by an acetyl, carboxymethyl or methoxycarbonylmethyl group and/or

may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton and/or at the phenyl groups contained in these groups by fluorine, chlorine or bromine atoms, by methyl groups, nitro, methoxy, methanesulphonylamino, phenyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxycarbonyl, carboxy, hydroxy, amino, acetylamino, cyclohexanecarbonylamino, aminocarbonyl, hydroxyethylaminocarbonyl, (4-morpholinyl)carbonyl, (4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)-1-piperidinyl]carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)piperidinyl]-carbonylamino or aminocarbonylamino groups, wherein the substituents may be identical or different and multiple substitution with the last six substituents is excluded,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, with the proviso that

- 23 -

(i) R^1 does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl or naphthyl group or

(ii) Z^2 does not denote a group containing N,

R^N may also denote the hydroxy group,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom and Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group, a benzoylamino-carbonylamino group, a phenylamino group optionally at least monosubstituted by an aminocarbonyl group at the aniline nitrogen and in the phenyl moiety

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group and in the group of general formula (II) o and p each assume the value 1, a phenylmethylamino group optionally at least monosubstituted by a tert. butoxycarbonyl group at the benzylamine nitrogen and in the phenyl moiety,

or, if $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ denotes the divalent group $\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}$, R may also denote the 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-1'-yl group,

Z^1 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_3-$,

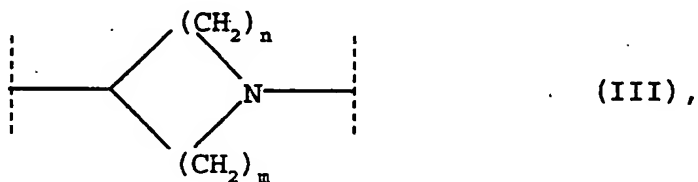
wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a methyl or hydroxy group,

one of the groups

-NH-CH₂, -CH₂-NH- or -(CH₂)₂-NH-,

wherein the nitrogen atoms are each linked to a carbonyl group of the groups Z¹ or Z³ and the hydrogen atom of the imino group may be replaced in each case by the methyl group,

the group -CH=CH- or, if R¹ does not represent an aromatic or heteroaromatic group substituted by cycloalkyl or phenyl groups or R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on benzene ring, it also denotes a divalent group of general formula



wherein

m denotes one of the numbers 1 or 2 and n denotes one of the numbers 1, 2 or 3 and the nitrogen atom is linked to the group Z³ with the meaning of a carbonyl group,

Z³ denotes the carbonyl group or, if R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on aromatic or heteroaromatic ring, it also denotes the methylene group,

wherein at least one of the groups Z¹ and Z³ denotes the carbonyl group and the sequence Z¹-Z²-Z³ is at least four-membered, and

R¹ is as hereinbefore defined under the particularly preferred compounds,

the tautomers, diastereomers, enantiomers and salts thereof.

The following are listed as examples of most particularly preferred compounds:

- (1) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone
- (2) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-6-methyl-2(2H)-benzimidazolone
- (3) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-5-methyl-2(2H)-benzimidazolone
- (4) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-5-nitro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone
- (5) 5-amino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone
- (6) 5-acetylamino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone
- (7) 3-acetyl-5-acetylamino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone
- (8) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-5-cyclohexanecarbonylamino-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone
- (9) 5-aminocarbonylamino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone

- (10) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (11) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (12) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone
- (13) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-pyrido[2,3-d]pyrimidinone
- (14) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-4-phenyl-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2(2H)-imidazolone
- (15) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-5-methyl-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone
- (16) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-8-methyl-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (17) 3-{1-[4-(4-acetylamino-3-bromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-8-methyl-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (18) 3-{1-[4-(4-acetylamino-3-bromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (19) 1-{1-[4-(4-acetylamino-3-bromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone
- (20) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3-bromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone

- 27 -

- (21) 1-{1-[4-(4-acetylamino-3-bromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone
- (22) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3-bromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (23) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3-bromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-8-methyl-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (24) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3-bromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone
- (25) 3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(4-methoxyphenyl)butyl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (26) 3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[4-(4-chlorophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (27) 3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(4-methylamino-3-nitrophenyl)butyl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (28) 3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[4-(4-chloro-3-nitrophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (29) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-6,7-dimethoxy-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (30) 3-{1-[4-(1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (31) 3-{1-[4-(1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxobenzimidazol-5-yl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

- (32) (R,S)-3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-3-pyrrolidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (33) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-8-methoxy-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (34) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-5-chloro-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (35) 3-{1-[4-(3-amino-4-chlorophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (36) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-thieno[3,4-d]pyrimidinone
- (37) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-(3-trifluoromethylphenyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone
- (38) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-(3-thienyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone
- (39) 2-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-2,4-dihydro-5-phenyl-3(3H)-1,2,4-triazolone
- (40) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-thieno[3,2-d]pyrimidinone
- (41) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-(4-trifluoromethylphenyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone
- (42) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-pyrido[3,4-d]pyrimidinone

- (43) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-pyrido[4,3-d]pyrimidinone
- (44) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-6-hydroxy-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (45) (E)-3-{1-[4-(4-bromophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (46) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[4-(3,4-dimethylphenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (47) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (48) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(1-naphthyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (49) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[4-[4-(1,1-dimethylethyl)phenyl]-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (50) (E)-3-{1-[4-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (51) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(3-nitrophenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (52) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(3-methylphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (53) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[4-(4-cyclohexylphenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone

- (54) (E)-3-{1-[4-[3,5-bis-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-4-hydroxyphenyl]-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (55) (E)-3-{1-[4-(4-chloro-3-methylphenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (56) (E)-3-{1-[4-(3-bromo-4-nitrophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (57) (E)-3-{1-[4-(3-bromophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (58) 4-amino-3,5-dibromo-N-{2-[4-(1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxo-1-benzimidazolyl)-1-piperidinyl]ethyl}-benzamide
- (59) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperazinyl}-2(1H)-quinolinone
- (60) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (61) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperazinyl}-2(1H)-quinoxalinone
- (62) 3-{1-[4-(4-biphenyllyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (63) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-urea
- (64) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone

- (65) 3-{1-[4-(3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (66) 3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(2-methoxyphenyl)butyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (67) 3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(4-fluorophenyl)butyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (68) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-methyl-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone
- (69) 3-{1-[4-(4-acetylamino-3-bromophenyl)-1-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (70) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3-bromophenyl)-1-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (71) (E)-3-{1-[4-(4-cyanophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (72) 3-{1-[4-(4-cyanophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (73) (R,S)-3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3-cyano-5-fluorophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-hydroxybutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (74) (E)-3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3-cyano-5-fluorophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (75) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3-cyano-5-fluorophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

- (76) 3-{1-[4-(4-aminomethyl)phenyl]-1-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (77) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3-cyano-5-fluorophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone
- (78) 2-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,1-dioxido-1,2,4-benzothiadiazin-3(4H)-one
- (79) 3-{1'-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (80) 1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-hydroxypiperidine
- (81) 3-[1'-(4-amino-3,5-dibromobenzoyl)-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (82) (E)-3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (83) (E)-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone
- (84) (E)-4-amino-3,5-dibromo- γ -oxobenzenebutenoic acid amide
- (85) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinolinone
- (86) (R,S)-3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinolinone

- 33 -

- (87) 1-(4-amino-3,5-dibromobenzoyl)-3-{[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]carbonyl}-azetidine
- (88) 1-(3,5-dibromo-4-hydroxybenzoyl)-3-{[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]carbonyl}-azetidine
- (89) 3-[1'-(4-amino-3,5-dibromobenzoyl)-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-2,4(1H,3H)-quinazolinedione
- (90) 1-[1'-(4-amino-3,5-dibromobenzoyl)-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone
- (91) 3-[1'-(3,5-dibromo-4-hydroxybenzoyl)-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (92) 3-[1'-(3,5-dibromo-4-hydroxybenzoyl)-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-2,4(1H,3H)-quinazolinedione
- (93) 1-[1'-(3,5-dibromo-4-hydroxybenzoyl)-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone
- (94) 1-[1'-(4-amino-3,5-dibromobenzoyl)-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-1,3-dihydro-4-(3-trifluoromethylphenyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone
- (95) 1-[1'-(4-amino-3,5-dibromobenzoyl)-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-1,3-dihydro-5-hydroxy-4-(3-trifluoromethylphenyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone
- (96) 1'-(4-amino-3,5-dibromobenzoyl)-4-{[[[3-trifluoromethylbenzoyl)amino]carbonyl]amino}-[1.4']bipiperidinyl

(97) 1-[1'-(3,5-dibromo-4-hydroxybenzoyl)-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-1,3-dihydro-4-(3-trifluoromethylphenyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone

(98) 1-(4-amino-3,5-dibromobenzoyl)-3-[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-azetidine

(99) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-3-azetidiny]-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(100) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-imidazolone

(101) 3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[4-(3-fluoro-4-methoxyphenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(102) 3-{1-[4-(3,5-dibromo-4-methylphenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(103) (E)-3-{1-[4-[3-chloro-4-(dimethylamino)phenyl]-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(104) 3-{1-[4-[3-chloro-4-(dimethylamino)phenyl]-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(105) 3-{1-[4-[3-chloro-4-[4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl]phenyl]-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(106) 3-{1-[4-[3-bromo-4-[[1.4']bipiperidinyl-1'-yl]phenyl]-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

- 35 -

- (107) 3-{1-[4-[3-bromo-4-[4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl]phenyl]-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (108) 3-{1-[4-[3-bromo-4-[4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl]phenyl]-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (19) N-[2-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-2-oxoethyl]-N-methyl-4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-piperidine-1-carboxamide
- (110) 3-{1-[4-[3,5-dibromo-4-[4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl]phenyl]-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (111) 3-{1-[4-[3,5-dibromo-4-[4-[4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl]-1-piperidinyl]phenyl]-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (112) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-3-methoxycarbonylmethyl-2(2H)-benzimidazolone
- (113) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-3-carboxymethyl-2(2H)-benzimidazolone
- (114) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone
- (115) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(116) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-7-hydroxy-2(2H)-imidazo[4,5-d]-pyrimidinone

(117) methyl 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-7-carboxylate

(118) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-7-carboxylic acid

(119) 1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-(2-aminocarbonylaminobenzeneamino)-piperidine

(120) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-7-carboxamide

(121) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-7-[(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)carbonyl]-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(122) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-7-[(4-morpholinyl)carbonyl]-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(123) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-7-carboxamide

(124) 1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-(2-methanesulphonylaminobenzeneamino)-piperidine

(125) N-[2-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-2-oxoethyl]-4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-piperidine-1-carboxamide

- (126) 4-amino-3,5-dibromo-N-{3-[4-(1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxo-1-benzimidazolyl)-1-piperidinyl]-3-oxopropyl}-benzamide
- (127) 4-amino-3,5-dibromo-N-{3-[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-3-oxopropyl}-benzamide
- (128) 4-amino-3,5-dibromo-N-{2-[4-(1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxo-1-benzimidazolyl)-1-piperidinyl]-2-oxoethyl}-benzamide
- (129) 4-amino-3,5-dibromo-N-{2-[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-2-oxoethyl}-benzamide
- (130) 4-amino-3,5-dibromo-N-{2-[4-(1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-oxo-imidazol-1-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-2-oxoethyl}-benzamide
- (131) 1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-N-[(2-aminocarbonylaminophenyl)methyl]-4-piperidineamine
- (132) 3-{1-[4-(4-acetylamino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (133) 1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-N-[(2-aminocarbonylaminophenyl)methyl]-4-piperidineamine
- (134) 1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-N-[(2-methanesulphonylaminophenyl)methyl]-4-piperidineamine
- (135) 4-amino-3,5-dibromo-N-{3-[4-(1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-oxo-imidazol-1-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-3-oxopropyl}-benzamide
- (136) 4-amino-3,5-dibromo-N-{2-[4-(1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxo-1-benzimidazolyl)-1-piperidinyl]-2-oxoethyl}-N-methyl-benzamide

(137) 4-amino-3,5-dibromo-N-{2-[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-2-oxoethyl}-N-methylbenzamide

(138) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4,4a,5,6,7,8,8a-octahydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(139) N-{2-[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-2-oxoethyl}-2-naphthalenecarboxamide

(140) N-{2-[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-2-oxoethyl}-1-naphthalenecarboxamide

(141) 4-amino-3-chloro-N-{2-[4-(1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxo-1-benzimidazolyl)-1-piperidinyl]ethyl}-5-trifluoromethylbenzamide

(142) 1,3-dihydro-1-{1-[4-(2-naphthyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(2H)-benzimidazolone

(143) 3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[4-(2-naphthyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(144) 1,3-dihydro-1-{1-[4-(1-naphthyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(2H)-benzimidazolone

(145) 3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[4-(1-naphthyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(146) (R,S)-3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-methylbutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

- 39 -

- (147) 1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-N-{2-{[1.4']bipiperidinyl-1'-ylcarbonylamino}phenylmethyl}-4-piperidineamine
- (148) 3-{8-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1]oct-3-yl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (149) 3-{3-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-7-methyl-3,7-diazabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone (diastereomer to compound no. 150)
- (150) 3-{3-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-7-methyl-3,7-diazabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone (diastereomer to compound no. 149)
- (151) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-5-(phenylmethyl)-imidazolidin-2,4-dione
- (152) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-5-phenyl-imidazolidin-2,4-dione
- (153) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2,1,3-benzothiadiazin-2,2-dioxide
- (154) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-(4-fluorophenyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone
- (155) 4-amino-N-{2-[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-2-oxoethyl}-3-fluoro-5-iodobenzamide
- (156) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-(2-naphthyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone

(157) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-4-(4-biphenyl)-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-imidazolone

(158) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-(2-methoxyphenyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone

(159) 1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-4-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-imidazolone

(160) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-6-chloro-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(161) 3-[1'-(4-amino-3,5-dibromobenzoyl)-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-5-(phenylmethyl)-imidazolidin-2,4-dione

(162) 1-[1'-(4-amino-3,5-dibromobenzoyl)-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-1,3-dihydro-4-(2-naphthyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone

(163) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-imidazo[4.5-c]quinolinone

(164) 3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8-octahydro-9-phenanthryl)butyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(165) (R,S)-1-(4-amino-3,5-dibromobenzoyl)-3-[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-pyrrolidine

(166) (R,S)-1-(3,4-dichlorobenzoyl)-3-[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-pyrrolidine

(167) (E)-3-{1-[4-(4-biphenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

- 41 -

- (168) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(4-ethoxycarbonylphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (169) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(3,4,5-trimethoxyphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (170) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(3-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (171) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(3-ethylphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (172) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(3-methoxyphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (173) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(4-methylethoxyphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (174) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(3-fluoro-4-methoxyphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (175) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-[4-(1-piperidinyl)phenyl]-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (176) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone
- (177) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(4-trifluoromethylphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(178) (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(4-carboxyphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(179) 3-{1-[5-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,5-dioxopentyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(180) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-2-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonylamino)-3,4-dihydroquinazoline

(181) 2-amino-3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydroquinazoline

(182) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinethione

(183) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-2-cyanimino-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinazoline

(184) (R,S)-3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-3-methylbutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

(185) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,3-benzodiazepin-2(1H)-one

(186) 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,3-benzodiazepin-2(1H)-one

(187) 1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl-N-[(2-methanesulphonylamino)phenyl]-methyl]-4-piperidineamine

- 43 -

(188) 1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl-N-{2-{[1.4']bipiperidinyl-1'-ylcarbonylamino}phenylmethyl})-4-piperidineamine,

but particularly the abovementioned compounds (12), (37), (38), (81), (82), (83), (115), (117), (120), (123), (163) and (182),

and the salts thereof.

The compounds of general formula I are prepared by methods known in principle. The following methods have proved particularly suitable for preparing the compounds of general formula I according to the invention:

a) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein Z^1 denotes the methylene group, Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2$, $-(CH_2)_3$ - or $-CH=CH-$ and Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group and

R has the meanings given hereinbefore with the exception of a 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-1'-yl group:

alkylating a compound of general formula



wherein

R' has the meanings given for R hereinbefore with the exception of a 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-1'-yl group,

with a compound of general formula



wherein

R^1 is as hereinbefore defined,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(\text{CH}_2)_2$, $-(\text{CH}_2)_3$ - or $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$,

Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group and

X denotes a leaving group, e.g. a halogen atom such as the chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, an alkylsulphonyloxy group with 1 to 10 carbon atoms in the alkyl moiety, a phenylsulphonyloxy or naphthylsulphonyloxy group optionally mono-, di- or trisubstituted by chlorine or bromine atoms, by methyl or nitro groups, whilst the substituents may be identical or different.

The reaction is carried out with or without auxiliary bases at temperatures between 0°C and $+140^\circ\text{C}$, preferably between $+20^\circ\text{C}$ and $+100^\circ\text{C}$, and preferably in the presence of solvents. The auxiliary bases used may be alkali metal and alkaline earth metal hydroxides, e.g. sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide or barium hydroxide, but preferably alkali metal carbonates, e.g. sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate or caesium carbonate, and also alkali metal acetates, e.g. sodium or potassium acetate, as well as tertiary amines, e.g. pyridine, 2,4,6-trimethylpyridine, quinoline, triethylamine, N-ethyl-diisopropylamine, N-ethyl-dicyclohexylamine, 1,4-diazabicyclo[2,2,2]octane or 1,8-diazabicyclo[5,4,0]undec-7-ene, the solvents used may be, for example, dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, but preferably dipolar aprotic solvents such as acetonitrile, dimethyl formamide, dimethyl acetamide, N-methyl-pyrrolidone, methyl-isobutylketone or mixtures thereof; if alkali metal or alkaline earth metal hydroxides, alkali metal carbonates or acetates are used as the auxiliary bases, water may also be added to the reaction mixture as cosolvent. To increase the

- 45 -

reactivity of the group X in the starting materials of general formula V organic or preferably inorganic iodides such as sodium or potassium iodide are also added to the reaction mixture.

b) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein Z^1 denotes the carbonyl group, Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2-$ or $-(CH_2)_3$, wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or a hydroxy group, one of the groups $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group, or the group $-CH=CH-$ and Z^3 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group:

Coupling a carboxylic acid of general formula



wherein

R^1 is as hereinbefore defined,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2-$ or $-(CH_2)_3$, wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or a hydroxy group, one of the groups $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group, or the group $-CH=CH-$, and Z^3 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group,

with a compound of general formula



wherein

R is as hereinbefore defined.

The coupling is preferably carried out using methods known from peptide chemistry (cf. e.g. Houben-Weyl, Methoden der Organischen Chemie, Vol. 15/2), for example using carbodiimides such as e.g. dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC), diisopropyl carbodiimide (DIC) or ethyl-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-carbodiimide, O-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-N,N'-N',N'-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate (HBTU) or tetrafluoroborate (TBTU) or 1H-benzotriazol-1-yl-oxy-tris-(dimethylamino)-phosphonium hexafluorophosphate (BOP). By adding 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBt) or 3-hydroxy-4-oxo-3,4-dihydro-1,2,3-benzotriazine (HOObt) any possible racemisation can additionally be suppressed, if desired, or the reaction speed can be increased. The couplings are normally carried out with equimolar amounts of the coupling components as well as the coupling reagent in solvents such as dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, acetonitrile, dimethyl formamide (DMF), dimethyl acetamide (DMA), N-methylpyrrolidone (NMP) or mixtures thereof and at temperatures between -30 and +30°C, preferably -20 and +20°C. If necessary, N-ethyl-diisopropylamine (DIEA) (Hünig base) is preferably used as an additional auxiliary base.

The so-called anhydride process is used as a further coupling method for synthesising compounds of general formula I (cf. also: M. Bodanszky, "Peptide Chemistry", Springer-Verlag 1988, p. 58-59; M. Bodanszky, "Principles of Peptide Synthesis", Springer-Verlag 1984, p. 21-27). The Vaughan variant of the mixed anhydride process is preferred (J.R. Vaughan Jr., J. Amer. Chem. Soc. 73, 3547 (1951)), in which the mixed anhydride of the optionally N²-protected α -amino acid which is to be coupled and monoisobutyl carbonate is obtained, using isobutyl chlorocarbonate in the presence of bases such as 4-methyl-

morpholine or 4-ethylmorpholine. The preparation of this mixed anhydride and the coupling with amines are carried out in a one-pot process, using the abovementioned solvents and at temperatures between -20 and +20°C, preferably 0 and +20°C.

c) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein Z^1 denotes the carbonyl group, Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2-$ or $-(CH_2)_3$, wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or hydroxy group, one of the groups $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group, or the group $-CH=CH-$ and Z^3 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group:

coupling a compound of general formula



wherein

R^1 is as hereinbefore defined,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2-$ or $-(CH_2)_3$, wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or a hydroxy group,

one of the groups $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group, or the group $-CH=CH-$,

Z^3 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group and

Nu denotes a leaving group, e.g. a halogen atom such as the chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, an alkylsulphonyloxy group with 1 to 10 carbon atoms in the alkyl moiety, a phenylsulphonyloxy or naphthylsulphonyloxy group optionally mono-, di- or trisubstituted by chlorine or bromine atoms, by methyl or nitro groups, whilst the substituents may be

identical or different, a 1H-imidazol-1-yl, a 1H-pyrazol-1-yl optionally substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups in the carbon skeleton, a 1H-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl, 1H-1,2,3-triazol-1-yl, 1H-1,2,3,4-tetrazol-1-yl, a vinyl, propargyl, p-nitrophenyl, 2,4-dinitrophenyl, trichlorophenyl, pentachlorophenyl, pentafluorophenyl, pyranyl or pyridinyl, a dimethylaminyloxy, 2(1H)-oxopyridin-1-yloxy, 2,5-dioxopyrrolidin-1-yloxy, phthalimidyloxy, 1H-benzotriazol-1-yloxy or azide group,

with a compound of general formula



wherein

R is as hereinbefore defined.

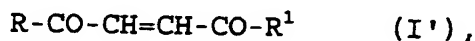
The reaction is carried out under Schotten-Baumann or Einhorn conditions, i.e. the components are reacted in the presence of at least one equivalent of an auxiliary base at temperatures between -50°C and +120°C, preferably -10°C and +30°C, and optionally in the presence of solvents. The auxiliary bases used are preferably alkali metal and alkaline earth metal hydroxides, e.g. sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide or barium hydroxide, alkali metal carbonates, e.g. sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate or caesium carbonate, alkali metal acetates, e.g. sodium or potassium acetate, as well as tertiary amines, e.g. pyridine, 2,4,6-trimethylpyridine, quinoline, triethylamine, N-ethyl-diisopropylamine, N-ethyl-dicyclohexylamine, 1,4-diazabicyclo[2,2,2]octane or 1,8-diazabicyclo[5,4,0]undec-7-ene, the solvents used may be, for example, dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, acetonitrile, dimethyl formamide, dimethyl acetamide, N-methyl-pyrrolidone or mixtures thereof; if alkali metal or alkaline earth metal hydroxides, alkali metal carbonates or

- 49 -

acetates are used as the auxiliary bases, water may also be added to the reaction mixture as cosolvent.

d) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the carbonyl group and Z^2 denotes the group $-(CH_2)_2-$:

catalytically hydrogenating a compound of general formula



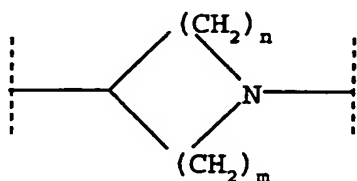
wherein

R and R^1 are as hereinbefore defined.

The catalytic hydrogenation may be carried out both with heterogeneous and with homogeneous catalysts. Of the heterogeneous catalysts those consisting of metals of the 8th sub-group of the Periodic Table are preferred, e.g. Raney nickel (R-Ni), palladium on charcoal, nickel reduced with sodium borohydride, or nickel boride (Paul, Buisson and Joseph, Ind. Eng. Chem. **44**, 1006 (1952); Brown, J. C. S. Chem. Commun. **1969**, 952, J. Org. Chem. **35**, 1900 (1973); Brown and Ahuja, J. Org. Chem. **38**, 2226 (1973), J. C. S. Chem. Commun. **1973**, 553; Schreifels, Maybury and Swartz, J. Org. Chem. **46**, 1263 (1981); Nakao and Fujishige, Chem. Lett. **1981**, 925; Nakao, Chem. Lett. **1982**, 997), platinum metal, platinum on charcoal, platinum(IV)-oxide, rhodium, ruthenium, sodium hydride-sodium methoxide-nickel(II)-acetate (Brunet, Gallois and Caubère, J. Org. Chem. **45**, 1937, 1946 (1980)), of the homogeneous catalysts chlorotris(triphenylphosphine) and $RhCl(Ph_3P)_3$ (Wilkinson's catalyst; Abstract: Jardine, Prog. Inorg. Chem. **28**, 63-202 (1981)) are preferred. When using the abovementioned heterogeneous catalysts, any nitro groups present in the groups R or R^1 are simultaneously reduced to

amino groups, while if excessively high temperatures are used nitrile groups are also reduced to aminomethyl groups. The abovementioned homogeneous catalyst chlorotris(triphenylphosphine) on the other hand leaves intact any nitro or cyano groups present during the hydrogenation of the C=C-double bonds in compounds of general formula VII. The hydrogenations are carried out at temperatures between -5°C and $+50^{\circ}\text{C}$, preferably between $+15$ and $+25^{\circ}\text{C}$ and most preferably at room temperature. Both the catalyst and the hydrogen required can be produced *in situ*, for example by treating hexachloroplatinic(IV)-acid or rhodium(III)-chloride with sodium borohydride (Brown and Sivasankaran, J. Am. Chem. Soc. **84**, 2828 (1962); Brown and Brown, J. Am. Chem. Soc. **84**, 1494, 1495, 2829 (1962), J. Org. Chem. **31**, 3989 (1966); Brown, Sivasankaran and Brown, J. Org. Chem. **28**, 214 (1963)). Examples of solvents which are particularly suitable for the catalytic hydrogenations in question are ethanol, methanol, ethyl acetate, 1,4-dioxane and acetic acid, if miscible therewith, optionally with the addition of water, and mixtures of these solvents.

e) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein Z^1 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond, Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-\text{NH}-$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group, or a divalent group of general formula



(III),

wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2, 3 or 4 and

Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group:

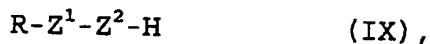
coupling a carboxylic acid of general formula



wherein

R^1 is as hereinbefore defined,

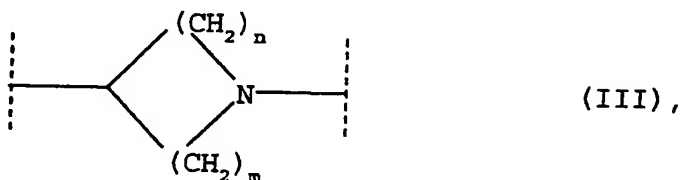
with a compound of general formula



wherein

R is as hereinbefore defined,

Z¹ denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z² denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond, Z² denotes one of the groups -CH₂-NH- or -(CH₂)₂-NH, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C₁₋₃-alkyl group, or a divalent group of general formula



wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2, 3 or 4 and

Z³ denotes the carbonyl group.

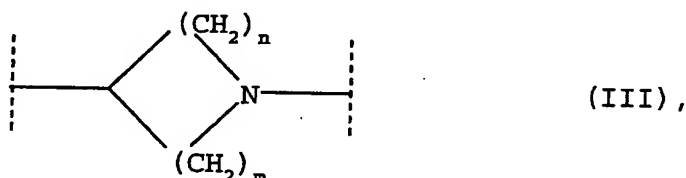
The coupling is preferably carried out using methods known from peptide chemistry (cf. e.g. Houben-Weyl, Methoden der Organischen Chemie, Vol. 15/2), for example using carbodiimides such as e.g. dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC), diisopropyl carbodiimide (DIC) or ethyl-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-carbodiimide, O-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-N,N'-N',N'-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate (HBTU) or -tetrafluoroborate (TBTU) or 1H-benzotriazol-1-yl-oxy-tris-(dimethylamino)-phosphonium hexafluorophosphate (BOP). By adding 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBt) or 3-hydroxy-4-oxo-3,4-dihydro-1,2,3-benzotriazine (HOOBt) any possible racemisation can additionally be suppressed, if desired, or the reaction speed can be increased. The couplings are normally carried out with equimolar amounts of the coupling components as well as the coupling reagent in solvents such as dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, acetonitrile, dimethyl formamide (DMF), dimethyl acetamide (DMA), N-methylpyrrolidone (NMP) or mixtures thereof and at temperatures between -30 and +30°C, preferably -20 and +20°C. If necessary, N-ethyl-diisopropylamine (DIEA) (Hünig base) is preferably used as an additional auxiliary base.

The so-called anhydride process is used as a further coupling method for synthesising compounds of general formula I (cf. also: M. Bodanszky, "Peptide Chemistry", Springer-Verlag 1988, p. 58-59; M. Bodanszky, "Principles of Peptide Synthesis", Springer-Verlag 1984, p. 21-27). The Vaughan variant of the mixed anhydride process is preferred (J.R. Vaughan Jr., J. Amer. Chem. Soc. 73, 3547 (1951)), in which the mixed anhydride of the optionally N²-protected α -amino acid which is to be coupled and monoisobutyl carbonate, is obtained using isobutyl

chlorocarbonate in the presence of bases such as 4-methylmorpholine or 4-ethylmorpholine. The preparation of this mixed anhydride and the coupling with amines are carried out in a one-pot process, using the abovementioned solvents and at temperatures between -20 and +20°C, preferably 0 and +20°C.

f) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein Z^1 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, Z^1 may also denote a bond,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-\text{CH}_2\text{-NH-}$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{-NH}$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group, or Z^1 denotes a divalent group of general formula



wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2, 3 or 4 and

Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group:

coupling a compound of general formula



wherein

R^1 is as hereinbefore defined and

Nu denotes a leaving group, e.g. a halogen atom such as the chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, an alkylsulphonyloxy group

with 1 to 10 carbon atoms in the alkyl moiety, a phenylsulphonyloxy or naphthylsulphonyloxy group optionally mono-, di- or trisubstituted by chlorine or bromine atoms, by methyl or nitro groups, whilst the substituents may be identical or different, a 1H-imidazol-1-yl, a 1H-pyrazol-1-yl optionally substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups in the carbon skeleton, a 1H-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl, 1H-1,2,3-triazol-1-yl, 1H-1,2,3,4-tetrazol-1-yl, a vinyl, propargyl, p-nitrophenyl, 2,4-dinitrophenyl, trichlorophenyl, pentachlorophenyl, pentafluorophenyl, pyranil or pyridinyl, a dimethylaminyloxy, 2(1H)-oxopyridin-1-yloxy, 2,5-dioxopyrrolidin-1-yloxy, phthalimidyloxy, 1H-benzotriazol-1-yloxy or azide group,

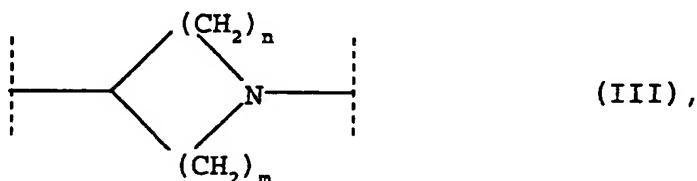
with a compound of general formula



wherein

R is as hereinbefore defined,

Z^1 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond, Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH$ wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group, or a divalent group of general formula



wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2, 3 or 4 and

Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group.

- 55 -

The reaction is carried out under Schotten-Baumann or Einhorn conditions, i.e. the components are reacted in the presence of at least one equivalent of an auxiliary base at temperatures between -50°C and $+120^{\circ}\text{C}$, preferably -10°C and $+30^{\circ}\text{C}$, and optionally in the presence of solvents. The auxiliary bases used are preferably alkali metal and alkaline earth metal hydroxides, e.g. sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide or barium hydroxide, alkali metal carbonates, e.g. sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate or caesium carbonate, alkali metal acetates, e.g. sodium or potassium acetate, as well as tertiary amines, e.g. pyridine, 2,4,6-trimethylpyridine, quinoline, triethylamine, N-ethyl-diisopropylamine, N-ethyl-dicyclohexylamine, 1,4-diazabicyclo[2,2,2]octane or 1,8-diazabicyclo[5,4,0]undec-7-ene, the solvents used may be, for example, dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, acetonitrile, dimethyl formamide, dimethyl acetamide, N-methyl-pyrrolidone or mixtures thereof; if alkali metal or alkaline earth metal hydroxides, alkali metal carbonates or acetates are used as the auxiliary bases, water may also be added to the reaction mixture as cosolvent.

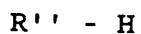
g) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein R and R^1 are as hereinbefore defined, with the proviso that they must not carry any free amino groups,

Z^1 denotes the carbonyl group,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_2-$ or $-\text{NH}-(\text{CH}_2)_2$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group and

Z^3 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group:

reacting an amine of general formula,



(XI),

wherein

R¹ has the meanings given for R hereinbefore, with the proviso that the group does not contain a free amino group,

with a carbonic acid derivative of general formula



wherein

X¹ denotes a nucleofugic group, preferably the 1H-imidazol-1-yl, 1H-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl, trichloromethoxy or 2,5-dioxo-pyrrolidin-1-yloxy group,

and with a compound of general formula



wherein

the group R^{1'} has the meanings given for R¹ hereinbefore, with the proviso that the group does not contain a free amino group,

Z² denotes one of the groups -NH-CH₂- or -NH-(CH₂)₂, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C₁₋₃-alkyl group and

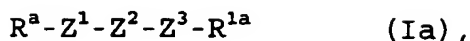
Z³ denotes the methylene or carbonyl group.

The reactions which are theoretically two-step reactions are usually carried out as one-pot processes, preferably by reacting one of the two components XI or XIII with equimolar

quantities of the carbonic acid derivative of general formula XII in a suitable solvent at lower temperature in the first stage, then adding at least equimolar amounts of the other component XIII or XI and finishing the reaction at elevated temperature. The reactions with bis-(trichloromethyl)-carbonate are preferably carried out in the presence of at least 2 equivalents (based on bis-(trichloromethyl)-carbonate) of a tertiary base, e.g. triethylamine, N-ethyl-diisopropylamine, pyridine, 1,5-diazabicyclo[4,3,0]non-5-ene, 1,4-diazabicyclo[2,2,2]octane or 1,8-diazabicyclo[5,4,0]undec-7-ene. Examples of solvents, which should be anhydrous, include tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, dimethyl formamide, dimethylacetamide, N-methyl-2-pyrrolidone, 1,3-dimethyl-2-imidazolidinone or acetonitrile; if bis-(trichloromethyl)-carbonate is used as the carbonyl component anhydrous chlorohydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, 1,2-dichloroethane or trichloroethylene are preferred. The reaction temperatures for the first reaction step are between -30 and +25°C, preferably -5 and +10°C, for the second reaction step they are between +15°C and the boiling temperature of the solvent used, preferably between +20°C and +70°C (cf. also: H. A. Staab and W. Rohr, "Synthesen mit heterocyclischen Amiden (Azoliden)", Neuere Methoden der Präparativen Organischen Chemie, Vol. V, p. 53 - 93, Verlag Chemie, Weinheim/Bergstr., 1967; P. Majer and R.S. Randad, J. Org. Chem. 59, 1937 - 1938 (1994); K. Takeda, Y. Akagi, A. Saiki, T. Sukahara and H. Ogura, Tetrahedron Letters 24 (42), 4569 - 4572 (1983)).

h) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein at least one of the groups R and R¹ contains one or more carboxy groups:

alkaline saponification of a carboxylic acid ester of general formula



wherein

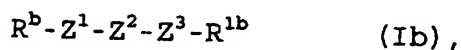
Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are as hereinbefore defined and R^a and R^{1a} have the meanings given for R and R^1 ; respectively, hereinbefore, with the proviso that at least one of these groups contains one or more alkoxycarbonyl groups,

optionally followed by treatment with dilute organic or inorganic acids in order to liberate the basic carboxylic acids from the salts initially formed.

For the alkaline saponification of the esters of general formula (Ia), lithium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide and potassium hydroxide are preferred; however, other alkali metal hydroxides such as caesium hydroxide, or alkaline earth metal hydroxides, for example barium hydroxide, or tetralkylammonium hydroxides are also suitable. The procedure is carried out in aqueous solution and advantageously with the addition of water-miscible co-solvents, preferably alcohols such as methanol, ethanol or 2-ethoxyethanol, or ethers such as tetrahydrofuran or 1,4-dioxane. Suitable temperatures for alkaline saponification are between -10°C and the boiling temperature of the water/solvent mixture used, but ambient temperature is preferred. Dilute aqueous organic or inorganic acids, e.g. acetic acid, oxalic acid, methanesulphonic acid, hydrochloric acid, sulphuric acid and phosphoric acid are suitable for liberating the basic carboxylic acids from the salts thereof formed initially.

i) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein at least one of the groups R and R^1 contains one or more amino groups:

acid hydrolysis of an acylamine of general formula



wherein

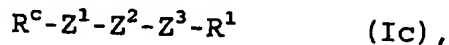
Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are as hereinbefore defined,

R^b and R^{1b} have the meanings given hereinbefore for R and R^1 , respectively, with the proviso that R^b is substituted by an acetylamino, propionylamino, cycloalkanecarbonylamino or benzoylamino group and/or R^{1b} is substituted by an acetylamino, propionylamino or benzoylamino group.

The acid hydrolysis is carried out using dilute to semi-concentrated aqueous, organic or inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, trichloroacetic acid or sulphuric acid, and in the presence or absence of cosolvents such as methanol, ethanol, acetic acid or dioxane. Suitable temperatures are between ambient temperature and 100°C; the boiling temperature of the solvent mixture used is preferred.

j) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein the group R contains one or two primary or secondary amino groups:

acidolysis of a compound of general formula



wherein

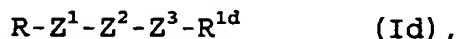
R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are as hereinbefore defined and

R^c has the meanings given for R hereinbefore, with the proviso that this group contains one or two primary or secondary amino groups which are substituted by a tert.alkoxycarbonyl group.

Acidolysis with trifluoroacetic acid is preferred, working with or without inert solvents, e.g. dichloromethane, and preferably in the absence of water. Suitable temperatures are between -50 and +90°C, preferably between 0°C and room temperature. It has also proved satisfactory to carry out the acidolysis of compounds of general formula (1c) with methanolic hydrochloric acid solution under reflux conditions, although experience has shown that an attack on carboxamide and ester functions cannot be entirely ruled out, which is why the trifluoroacetic acid variant is generally the method of choice.

k) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the carbonyl group, Z^2 denotes the group $-(CH_2)_2-$ and the group R^1 denotes a phenyl group which carries a tertiary amino group in the 4 position relative to the point of attachment but may otherwise be substituted as described hereinbefore:

nucleophilic aromatic substitution (cf also: Jerry March, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Third Edition, page 576-578, published by John Wiley & Sons, New York-Chichester-Brisbane-Toronto-Singapore, 1985) of a compound of general formula



wherein

R is as hereinbefore defined,

Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the carbonyl group,

Z^2 denotes the group $-(CH_2)_2-$ and

the group R^{1d} denotes a phenyl group which carries a nucleophilically exchangeable function, preferably a fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, in the 4 position relative

- 61 -

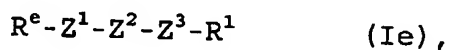
to the point of attachment, but may otherwise be substituted as described hereinbefore,

with a corresponding amine, for example with dimethylamine, piperidine, 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)piperazine, [4,1']bi-piperidinyl, 4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)piperidine or 4-[4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl]piperidine.

The reactions are carried out in excess secondary dialkylamine as solvent or using dipolar, aprotic solvents such as dimethylsulphoxide, dimethylformamide or sulpholane, and at temperatures of between 50 and 160°C, preferably 70 and 140°C. It may also be advantageous to add potassium carbonate to the reaction mixture.

1) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein the group R is uniformly mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by an aminocarbonyl, alkylaminocarbonyl or dialkylaminocarbonyl group :

coupling a compound of general formula



wherein

the group R^e has the meanings given for R hereinbefore with the proviso that it is mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by the carboxy group, and R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are as hereinbefore defined,

with ammonia or a corresponding alkylamine, for example ethanolamine, or a dialkylamine, for example 1-methylpiperazine or morpholine.

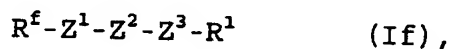
The coupling is preferably carried out using methods known from peptide chemistry (cf. e.g. Houben-Weyl, Methoden der Organischen Chemie, Vol. 15/2), for example using carbodiimides such as e.g. dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC), diisopropyl carbodiimide (DIC) or ethyl-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-carbodiimide, O-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-N,N'-N',N'-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate (HBTU) or tetrafluoroborate (TBTU) or 1H-benzotriazol-1-yl-oxy-tris-(dimethylamino)-phosphonium hexafluorophosphate (BOP). By adding 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBt) or 3-hydroxy-4-oxo-3,4-dihydro-1,2,3-benzotriazine (HOObt) any possible racemisation can additionally be suppressed, if desired, or the reaction speed can be increased. The couplings are normally carried out with equimolar amounts of the coupling components as well as the coupling reagent in solvents such as dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, acetonitrile, dimethyl formamide (DMF), dimethyl acetamide (DMA), N-methylpyrrolidone (NMP) or mixtures thereof and at temperatures between -30 and +30°C, preferably -20 and +20°C. If necessary, N-ethyl-diisopropylamine (DIEA) (Hünig base) is preferably used as an additional auxiliary base.

The so-called anhydride process is used as a further coupling method for synthesising compounds of general formula I (cf. also: M. Bodanszky, "Peptide Chemistry", Springer-Verlag 1988, p. 58-59; M. Bodanszky, "Principles of Peptide Synthesis", Springer-Verlag 1984, p. 21-27). The Vaughan variant of the mixed anhydride process is preferred (J.R. Vaughan Jr., J. Amer. Chem.Soc. 73, 3547 (1951)), in which the mixed anhydride of the optionally N²-protected α -amino acid which is to be coupled and monoisobutyl carbonate is obtained, using isobutyl chlorocarbonate in the presence of bases such as 4-methylmorpholine or 4-ethylmorpholine. The preparation of this mixed

anhydride and the coupling with amines are carried out in a one-pot process, using the abovementioned solvents and at temperatures between -20 and +20°C, preferably 0 and +20°C.

m) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein the group R is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an acetylamino group or in the carbon skeleton by an acetylamino group and at the same time is substituted at one of the aza-nitrogen atoms by an acetyl group:

aminolysis of acetic anhydride by a compound of general formula



wherein

R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are as hereinbefore defined and the group R^f has the meanings given for R hereinbefore with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an amino group.

The aminolysis reaction is carried out in water or inert, usually polar and water-miscible solvents, such as tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, pyridine, acetic acid or dimethylformamide, or in mixtures thereof and at temperatures between 0°C and 100°C. In order to obtain selective acetylation of the amino group in the carbon skeleton, it is preferable to use alcohols such as methanol or ethanol as the solvents and to carry out the procedure at ambient temperature.

n) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein the group R is as hereinbefore defined, with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an acetylamino,

propionylamino, cycloalkanecarbonylamino or benzoylamino group:

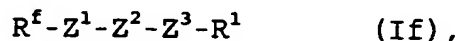
coupling a compound of general formula



wherein

R^{G} denotes a methyl, ethyl, cycloalkyl or phenyl group and Nu denotes a leaving group such as a halogen atom, e.g. the chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, an alkylsulphonyloxy group with 1 to 10 carbon atoms in the alkyl moiety, a phenylsulphonyloxy or naphthylsulphonyloxy group optionally mono-, di- or trisubstituted by chlorine or bromine atoms or by methyl or nitro groups, wherein the substituents may be identical or different, a 1H-imidazol-1-yl, a 1H-pyrazol-1-yl optionally substituted by 1 or 2 methyl groups in the carbon skeleton, a 1H-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl, 1H-1,2,3-triazol-1-yl, 1H-1,2,3,4-tetrazol-1-yl, a vinyl, propargyl, p-nitrophenyl, 2,4-dinitrophenyl, trichlorophenyl, pentachlorophenyl, pentafluorophenyl, pyranil or pyridinyl, a dimethylaminyloxy, 2(1H)-oxopyridin-1-yloxy, 2,5-dioxopyrrolidin-1-yloxy, phthalimidyloxy, 1H-benzotriazol-1-yloxy or azide group,

with a compound of general formula



wherein

R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are as hereinbefore defined and

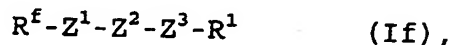
- 65 -

the group R^f has the meanings given for R hereinbefore with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an amino group.

The reaction is carried out under Schotten-Baumann or Einhorn conditions, i.e. the components are reacted in the presence of at least one equivalent of an auxiliary base at temperatures between -50°C and $+120^{\circ}\text{C}$, preferably -10°C and $+30^{\circ}\text{C}$, and optionally in the presence of solvents. The auxiliary bases used are preferably alkali metal and alkaline earth metal hydroxides, e.g. sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide or barium hydroxide, alkali metal carbonates, e.g. sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate or caesium carbonate, alkali metal acetates, e.g. sodium or potassium acetate, as well as tertiary amines, e.g. pyridine, 2,4,6-trimethylpyridine, quinoline, triethylamine, N-ethyl-diisopropylamine, N-ethyl-dicyclohexylamine, 1,4-diazabicyclo[2,2,2]octane or 1,8-diazabicyclo[5,4,0]undec-7-ene, the solvents used may be, for example, dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, acetonitrile, dimethyl formamide, dimethyl acetamide, N-methyl-pyrrolidone or mixtures thereof; if alkali metal or alkaline earth metal hydroxides, alkali metal carbonates or acetates are used as the auxiliary bases, water may also be added to the reaction mixture as cosolvent.

o) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein the group R is as hereinbefore defined with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an aminocarbonylamino group:

reacting a compound of general formula



wherein

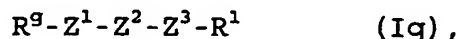
R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are as hereinbefore defined and the group R^f has the meanings given for R hereinbefore, with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an amino group,

with cyanic acid which is produced *in situ* from alkali metal cyanates, for example sodium cyanate or potassium cyanate, and dilute inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid or sulphuric acid. The reaction is carried out in suitable, water-miscible solvents, preferably tetrahydrofuran or 1,4-dioxane, and using water as cosolvent. Suitable reaction temperatures are between -5 and +50°C, preferably 0 and +25°C.

p) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein the group R is as hereinbefore defined, with the proviso that it is substituted by an aminomethyl group in the carbon skeleton, and

Z^2 has the meanings given hereinbefore with the exception of the group $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$:

catalytic hydrogenation of a compound of general formula



wherein

R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are as hereinbefore defined and the group R^g has the meanings given for R hereinbefore, with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by a nitrile group.

Nickel and palladium catalysts have proved suitable for the catalysis, e.g. Raney nickel (R-Ni), palladium on charcoal and nickel reduced with sodium borohydride or nickel boride (Paul,

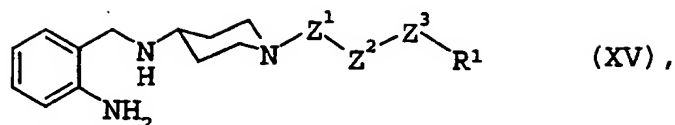
Buisson and Joseph, Ind. Eng. Chem. **44**, 1006 (1952); Brown, J. C. S. Chem. Commun. **1969**, 952, J. Org. Chem. **35**, 1900 (1973); Brown and Ahuja, J. Org. Chem. **38**, 2226 (1973), J. C. S. Chem. Commun. **1973**, 553; Schreifels, Maybury and Swartz, J. Org. Chem. **46**, 1263 (1981); Nakao and Fujishige, Chem. Lett. **1981**, 925; Nakao, Chem. Lett. **1982**, 997). Generally, it has proved suitable to work in a neutral or slightly alkaline medium, particularly when using Raney nickel as catalyst, while it is usually beneficial to add ammonia to the reaction mixture.

Palladium catalysts are also suitable for hydrogenating compounds of general formula Ig under acid conditions, i.e. in the presence of hydrochloric acid, sulphuric acid or phosphoric acid. Whereas nickel catalysts generally require slightly elevated temperatures between 40 and 100°C, the hydrogenations in question can be successfully carried out at ambient temperature using the palladium catalyst mentioned above.

Suitable hydrogen pressures are between normal pressure and 250 bar, while if palladium on charcoal is used as catalyst pressures of up to 10 bar are preferred. Suitable solvents are alcohols such as methanol or ethanol, ethers such as tetrahydrofuran or 1,4-dioxane, or esters, e.g. methyl acetate or ethyl acetate. Any C=C double bonds which may have been present in the chain $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3-Z^4-Z^5$ of the starting material Ig are also saturated during the hydrogenation.

q) In order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein R is the 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-thioxoquinazolin-3-yl]-1-piperidinyl or 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-cyanoiminoquinazolin-3-yl]-1-piperidinyl group:

reacting a diamine of general formula



wherein

R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are as hereinbefore defined,

with one of the carbonic acid derivatives N,N'-thiocarbonyldiimidazole or cyanoimino-diphenylcarbonate. The reactions are carried out at temperatures between 20°C and +100°C, preferably between +40°C and +120°C, and using inert solvents, for example dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, acetonitrile, dimethylformamide, dimethylacetamide, N-methyl-pyrrolidone or mixtures thereof.

The arylalkanes, arylalkenes and aryl-azaalkanes of general formula I according to the invention contain a chiral centre in some cases. As a result of a C=C double bond which may in certain circumstances be present in the chain $-Z^1-Z^2-Z^3-$, some of the compounds may also occur in the form of two geometric isomers; the methods of synthesis described hereinbefore predominantly produce the (E) isomers. The invention includes the individual isomers as well as the mixtures thereof.

The diastereomers may be separated on the basis of their different physico-chemical properties, e.g. by fractional crystallisation from suitable solvents, by high pressure liquid or column chromatography, using chiral or preferably non-chiral stationary phases.

Racemates covered by general formula (I) may be separated for example by HPLC on suitable chiral stationary phases (e.g. Chiral AGP, Chiralpak AD). Racemates which contain a basic or acidic function can also be separated via the diastereomeric, optically active salts which are produced on reacting with an

optically active acid, for example (+) or (-)-tartaric acid, (+) or (-)-diacetyl tartaric acid, (+) or (-)-monomethyl tartrate or (+)-camphorsulphonic acid, or an optically active base, for example with (R)-(+)-1-phenylethylamine, (S)-(-)-1-phenylethylamine or (S)-brucine.

According to a conventional method of separating isomers, the racemate of a compound of general formula (I) is reacted with one of the abovementioned optically active acids or bases in equimolar amounts in a solvent and the resulting crystalline, diastereomeric, optically active salts thereof are separated using their different solubilities. This reaction may be carried out in any type of solvent provided that it is sufficiently different in terms of the solubility of the salts. Preferably, methanol, ethanol or mixtures thereof, for example in a ratio by volume of 50:50, are used. Then each of the optically active salts is dissolved in water, neutralised with a base such as sodium carbonate or potassium carbonate, sodium hydroxide solution or potassium hydroxide solution and in this way the corresponding free compound is obtained in the (+) or (-) form.

The (R) or (S) enantiomer alone or a mixture of two optically active diastereomeric compounds covered by general formula I may also be obtained by performing the syntheses described above with a suitable reaction component in the (R) or (S) configuration.

The starting materials of general formulae V, VIII, X, XII, XIII and XIV required for the synthesis of the compounds of general formula I are commercially obtainable or may be prepared by methods known from the literature. Compounds of general formulae IV, IVa and XI are described in WO 98/11128 or are prepared analogously to the processes described

therein. Compounds of general formula IX may easily be obtained from compounds of general formula IV analogously to methods known from the literature. Compounds of general formulae Ia, Ib, Ic, Id, Ie, If, Ig, I' and XV may easily be obtained using the methods described in the present application. 4-Aryl-4-oxobutanoic acids of general formula VI may either easily be prepared analogously to methods known from the literature or may be obtained by catalytic hydrogenation of 4-aryl-4-oxo-2-butenic acids, which may in turn be synthesised from suitable alkanophenones by a process described in published German patent applications 2 047 806 and 2 103 749, by condensation with glyoxylic acid hydrate under acid conditions. Compounds of general formula VII may be obtained from VI by conventional methods known from the literature.

The compounds of general formula I obtained may, if they contain suitable basic functions, be converted, particularly for pharmaceutical use, into their physiologically acceptable salts with inorganic or organic acids. Suitable acids include for example hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, phosphoric acid, nitric acid, sulphuric acid, methanesulphonic acid, p-toluenesulphonic acid, acetic acid, fumaric acid, succinic acid, lactic acid, mandelic acid, malic acid, citric acid, tartaric acid or maleic acid.

Moreover, the new compounds of formula (I), if they contain an acid function, for example a carboxy group, may if desired be converted into the addition salts thereof with inorganic or organic bases, particularly for pharmaceutical use into the physiologically acceptable addition salts thereof. Suitable bases for this include, for example, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, ammonia, cyclohexylamine,

- 71 -

dicyclohexylamine, ethanolamine, diethanolamine and triethanolamine.

The new compounds of general formula I and the physiologically acceptable salts thereof have CGRP-antagonistic properties and exhibit good affinities in CGRP receptor binding studies. The compounds display CGRP-antagonistic properties in the pharmacological test systems described hereinafter.

The following experiments were carried out to demonstrate the affinity of compounds of general formula I for human CGRP-receptors and their antagonistic properties:

A. Binding studies with SK-N-MC cells (expressing the human CGRP receptor)

SK-N-MC cells are cultivated in "Dulbecco's modified Eagle medium". The medium is removed from confluent cultures. The cells are washed twice with PBS buffer (Gibco 041-04190 M), detached by the addition of PBS buffer mixed with 0.02% EDTA, and isolated by centrifuging. After resuspension in 20 ml of "Balanced Salts Solution" [BSS (in mM): NaCl 120, KCl 5.4, NaHCO₃ 16.2, MgSO₄ 0.8, NaHPO₄ 1.0, CaCl₂ 1.8, D-glucose 5.5, HEPES 30, pH 7.40] the cells are centrifuged twice at 100 x g and resuspended in BSS. After the number of cells has been determined, the cells are homogenised using an Ultra-Turrax and centrifuged for 10 minutes at 3000 x g. The supernatant is discarded and the pellet is recentrifuged in Tris buffer (10 mM Tris, 50 mM NaCl, 5 mM MgCl₂, 1 mM EDTA, pH 7.40) enriched with 1% bovine serum albumin and 0.1% bacitracin, and resuspended (1 ml / 1000000 cells). The homogenised product is frozen at -80°C. The membrane preparations are stable for more than 6 weeks under these conditions.

- 72 -

After thawing, the homogenised product is diluted 1:10 with assay buffer (50 mM Tris, 150 mM NaCl, 5 mM MgCl₂, 1 mM EDTA, pH 7.40) and homogenised for 30 seconds with an Ultra-Turrax. 230 μ l of the homogenised product are incubated for 180 minutes at ambient temperature with 50 pM ¹²⁵I-iodotyrosyl-Calcitonin-Gen-Related Peptide (Amersham) and increasing concentrations of the test substances in a total volume of 250 μ l. The incubation is ended by rapid filtration through GF/B-glass fibre filters treated with polyethyleneimine (0.1%) using a cell harvester. The protein-bound radioactivity is measured using a gamma counter. Non-specific binding is defined as the bound radioactivity in the presence of 1 μ M human CGRP- α during incubation.

The concentration binding curves are analysed using computer-aided non-linear curve matching.

The compounds of general formula I show IC₅₀ values \leq 10000 nM in the test described.

B. CGRP Antagonism in SK-N-MC cells

SK-N-MC cells (1 million cells) are washed twice with 250 μ l incubation buffer (Hanks' HEPES, 1 mM 3-isobutyl-1-methylxanthine, 1% BSA, pH 7.4) and pre-incubated at 37°C for 15 minutes. After the addition of CGRP (10 μ l) as agonist in increasing concentrations (10⁻¹¹ to 10⁻⁶ M), or additionally the substance in 3 to 4 different concentrations, the mixture is incubated for another 15 minutes.

Intracellular cAMP is then extracted by the addition of 20 μ l of 1M HCl and centrifugation (2000 x g, 4°C, for 15 minutes).

- 73 -

The supernatants are frozen in liquid nitrogen and stored at -20°C.

The cAMP contents of the samples are determined by radioimmunoassay (Messrs. Amersham) and the pA₂ values of antagonistically acting substances are determined graphically.

The compounds of general formula I exhibit CGRP-antagonistic properties in the *in vitro* test model described, in a dosage range of between 10⁻¹¹ to 10⁻⁵ M.

In view of their pharmacological properties the compounds of general formula I and the salts thereof with physiologically acceptable acids or bases are thus suitable for the acute and prophylactic treatment of headaches, particularly migraine or cluster headaches. Moreover, the compounds of general formula I also have a positive effect on the following diseases: non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus ("NIDDM"), cardiovascular diseases, morphine tolerance, skin diseases, particularly thermal and radiation-induced skin damage including sunburn, inflammatory diseases, e.g. inflammatory diseases of the joints (arthritis), inflammatory lung diseases, allergic rhinitis, asthma, diseases accompanied by excessive vasodilatation and consequent reduced circulation of blood through the tissues, e.g. shock and sepsis. The symptoms of menopausal hot flushes in oestrogen-deficient women caused by vasodilatation and increased blood flow are favourably affected by the CGRP-antagonists of the present application in a preventive and acute-therapeutic capacity, this therapeutic approach being distinguished from hormone replacement by the absence of side effects. Furthermore, the compounds of general formula I have a general pain-relieving effect.

The dosage required to achieve a corresponding effect is conveniently 0.001 to 30 mg/kg of body weight, preferably 0.01 to 5 mg/kg of body weight, when administered intravenously or subcutaneously and 0.01 to 50 mg/kg of body weight, preferably 0.1 to 30 mg/kg of body weight when administered orally, nasally or by inhalation, 1 to 3 x a day in each case.

For this, the compounds of general formula I prepared according to the invention, optionally combined with other active substances such as e.g. antiemetics, prokinetics, neuroleptics, antidepressants, neurokinine antagonists, anti-convulsants, histamine-H1 receptor antagonists, antimuscarinics, β -blockers, α -agonists and α -antagonists, ergot alkaloids, mild analgesics, non-steroidal antiinflammatories, corticosteroids, calcium antagonists, 5-HT_{1D} agonists or other anti-migraine agents, together with one or more inert conventional carriers and/or diluents, e.g. with corn starch, lactose, glucose, microcrystalline cellulose, magnesium stearate, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, citric acid, tartaric acid, water, water/ethanol, water/glycerol, water/sorbitol, water/polyethylene glycol, propylene glycol, cetylstearyl alcohol, carboxymethylcellulose or fatty substances such as hard fat or suitable mixtures thereof, may be formulated into conventional galenic preparations such as plain or coated tablets, capsules, powders, suspensions, solutions, metered dose aerosols or suppositories.

The active substances which may be used for the abovementioned combinations thus include, for example, meloxicam, ergotamine, dihydroergotamine, metoclopramide, domperidone, diphenhydramine, cyclizine, promethazine, chlorpromazine, dexamethasone, flunarizine, dextropropoxyphene, meperidine, propranolol, nadolol, atenolol, clonidine, indoramine,

- 75 -

carbamazepine, phenytoin, valproate, amitriptylin, lidocaine, diltiazem or sumatriptan and other 5-HT_{1D}-agonists such as, for example, naratriptan, zolmitriptan, avitriptan, rizatriptan and eletriptan. The dosage of these active substances is expediently 1/5 of the lowest recommended dose to 1/1 of the normally recommended dose, i.e. for example 20 to 100 mg of sumatriptan.

The invention further relates to the use of the compounds of general formula I as valuable adjuvants for the production and purification (by affinity chromatography) of antibodies as well as in RIA and ELISA assays, after suitable radioactive labelling, for example by direct labelling with ¹²⁵I or ¹³¹I or by tritiation of suitable precursors, for example by replacing halogen atoms with tritium, and as a diagnostic or analytical adjuvant in neurotransmitter research.

The Examples which follow are intended to illustrate the invention:

Preliminary remarks:

Satisfactory elementary analyses, IR, UV, ¹H-NMR and generally also mass spectra have been obtained for all the compounds. Unless otherwise stated, R_f values were obtained using ready-made silica gel TLC plates 60 F₂₅₄ (E. Merck, Darmstadt, Item no. 5729) without chamber saturation. If no detailed information is given as to the configuration, it is not clear whether it is a pure enantiomer or whether partial or even complete racemisation has occurred. The following eluants or mixtures of eluants were used for the chromatography:

El A = ethyl acetate/methanol 100/5 v/v

- 76 -

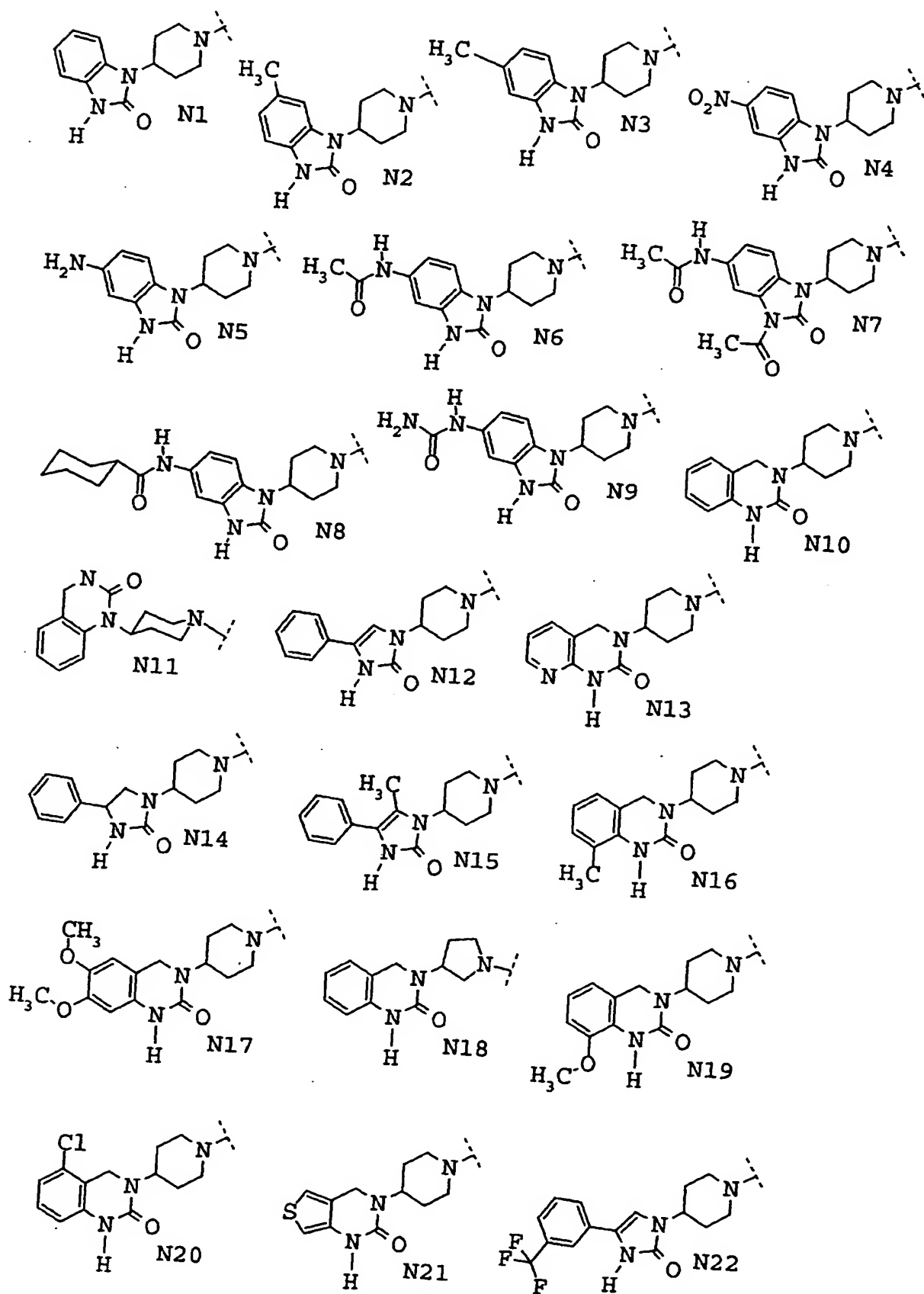
El B = ethyl acetate/methanol 80/20 v/v
El C = ethyl acetate/methanol/conc. ammonia 80/20/1
v/v/v
El D = dichloromethane/cyclohexane/methanol/conc. ammonia
350/75/75/10 v/v/v/v
El E = ethyl acetate/glacial acetic acid 99/1 v/v
El F = ethyl acetate/methanol/glacial acetic acid 90/10/1
v/v/v
El G = dichloromethane/methanol/conc. ammonia 90/10/1 v/v/v
El H = petroleum ether/ethyl acetate 1/1 v/v
El I = dichloromethane/methanol/glacial acetic acid 90/10/1.5
v/v/v
El K = dichloromethane/isopropanol 9/1 v/v
El L = ethyl acetate/methanol 9/1 v/v
El M = dichloromethane/methanol/conc. ammonia 75/25/5 v/v/v
El N = dichloromethane/ethyl acetate 1/1 v/v
El O = dichloromethane/methanol 95/5 v/v

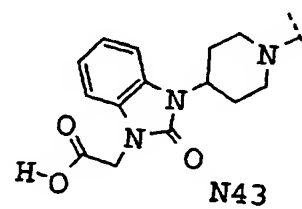
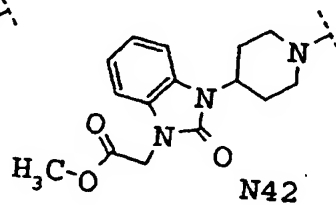
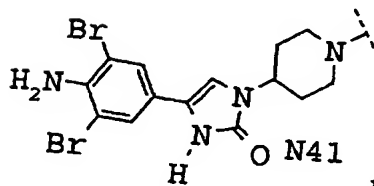
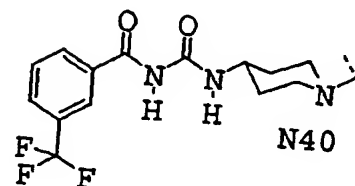
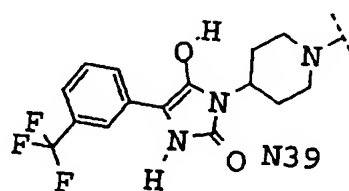
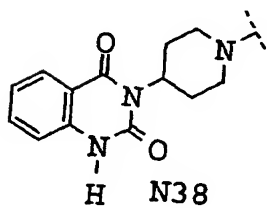
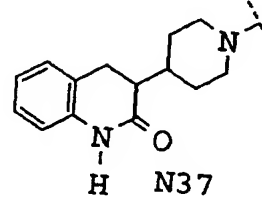
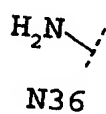
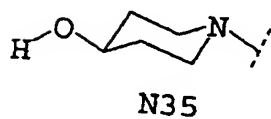
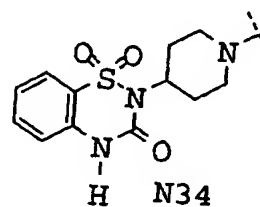
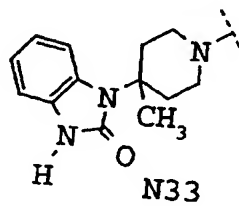
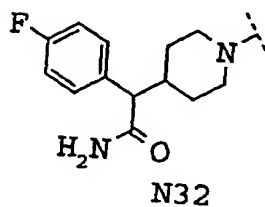
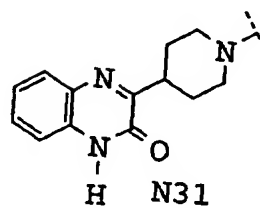
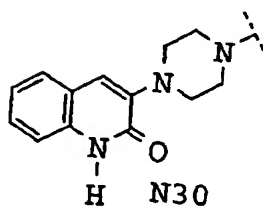
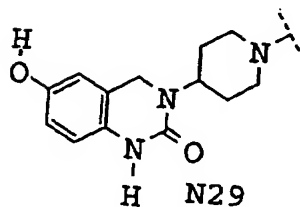
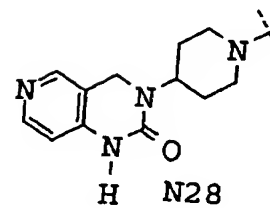
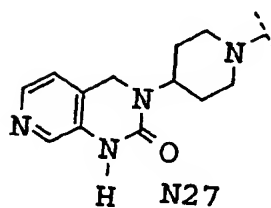
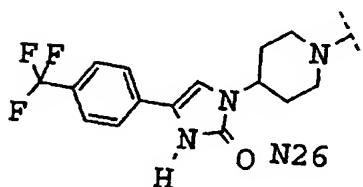
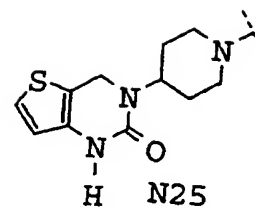
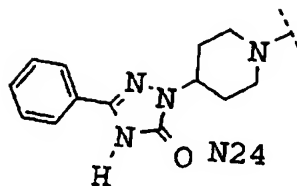
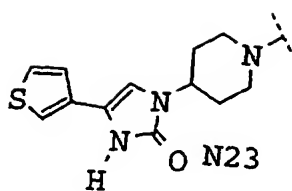
The following abbreviations are used in the description of the experiments:

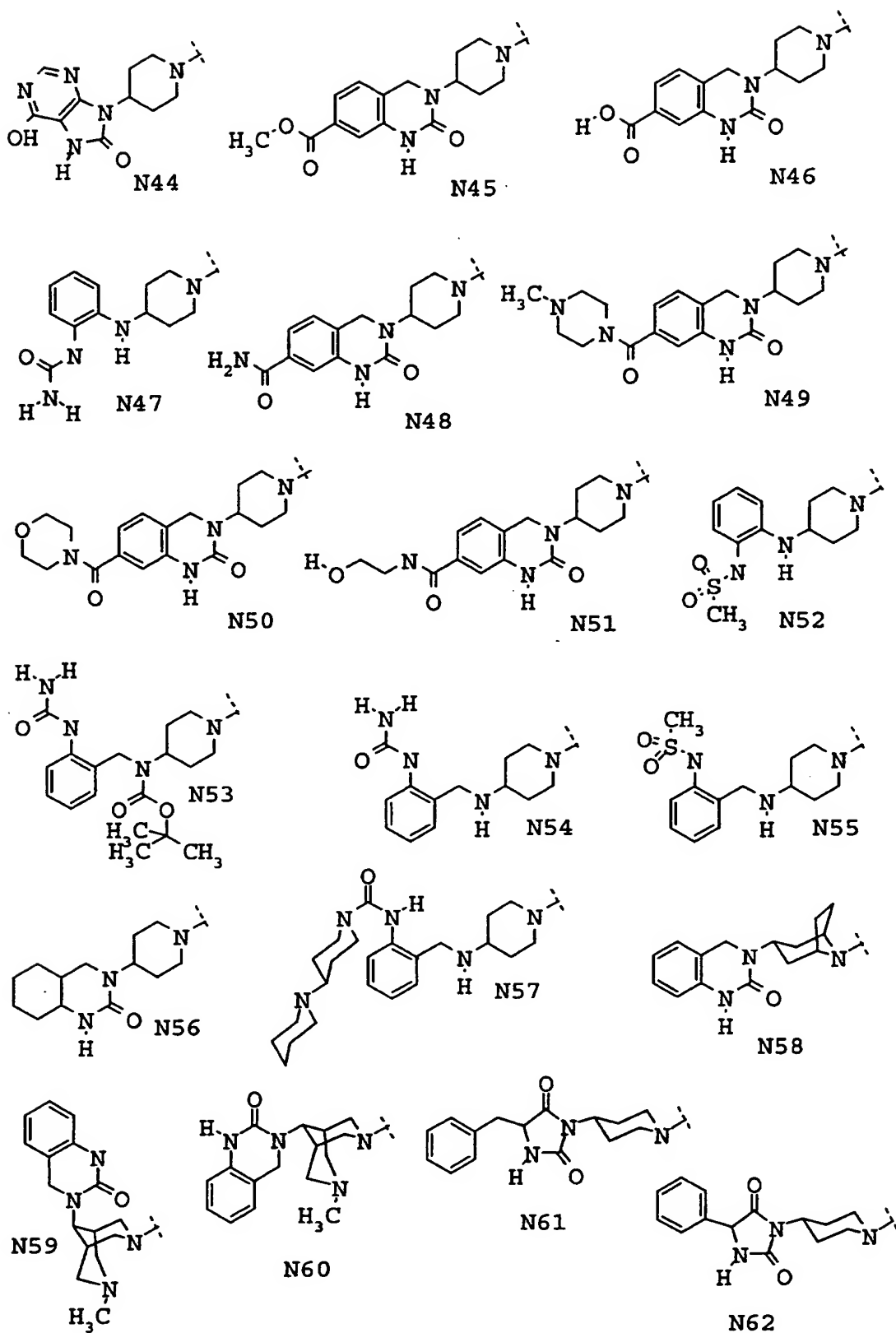
Mp.: melting point
(D): (decomposition)
DIEA: N,N-diisopropyl-ethylamine
Boc: (1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl
TBTU: 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium-tetrafluoroborate
HOBt: 1-hydroxybenzotriazole-hydrate
CDT: 1,1'-carbonyldi-(1,2,4-triazole)
THF: tetrahydrofuran
DMF: dimethyl formamide
EE: ethyl acetate
PE: petroleum ether
LM: solvents
I. No.: Item number

- 77 -

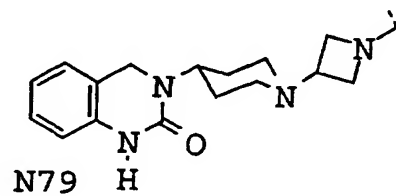
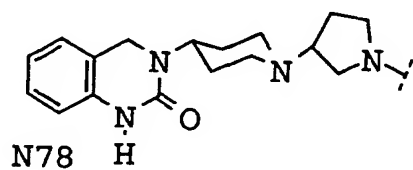
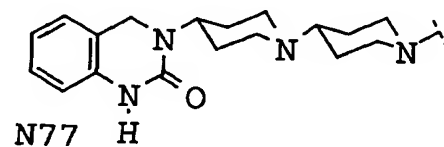
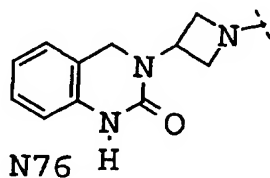
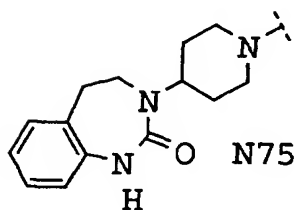
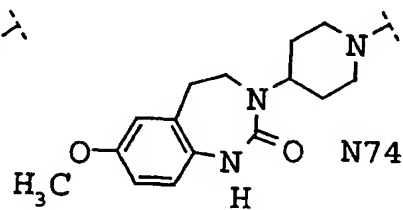
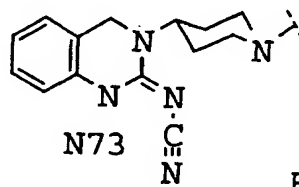
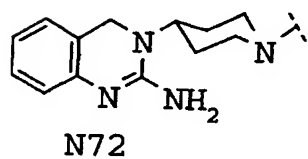
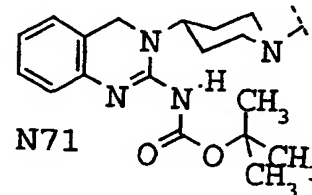
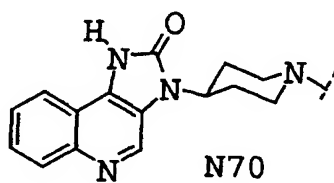
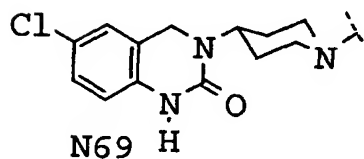
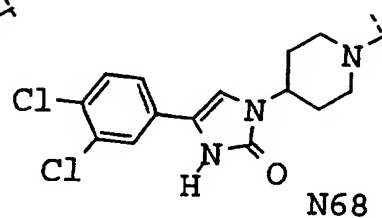
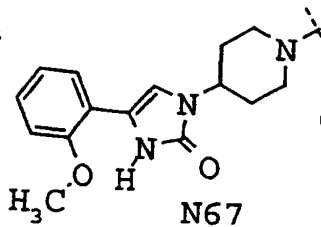
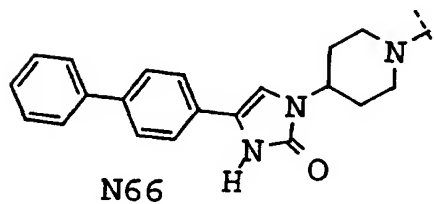
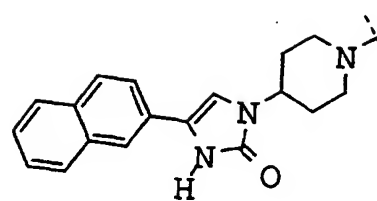
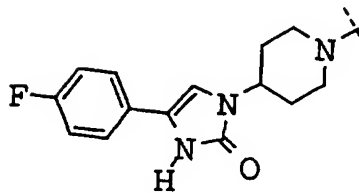
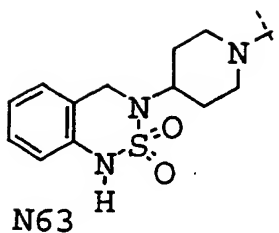
The meanings of the symbols consisting of letters and numbers used in the Examples are shown in the following summary:

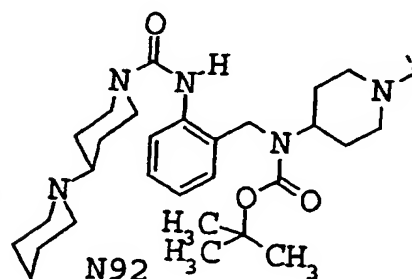
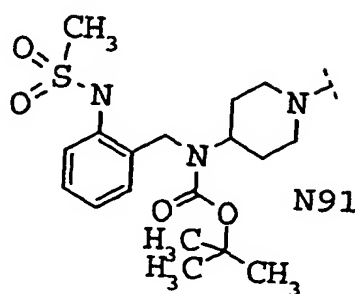
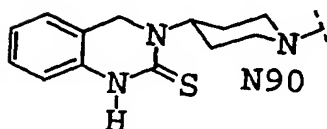
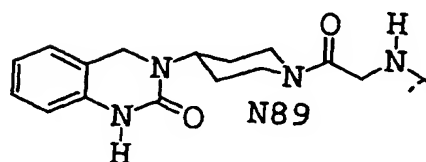
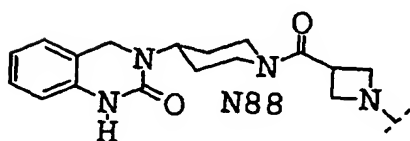
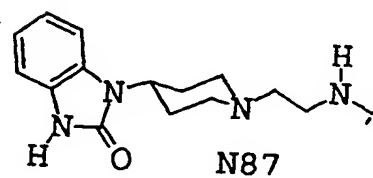
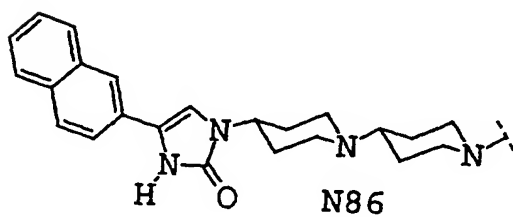
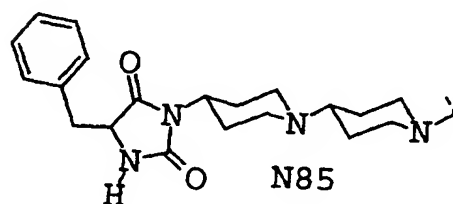
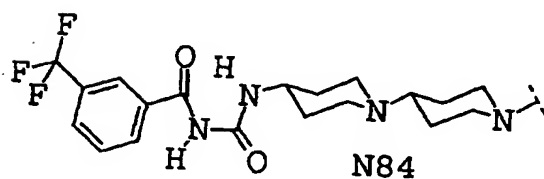
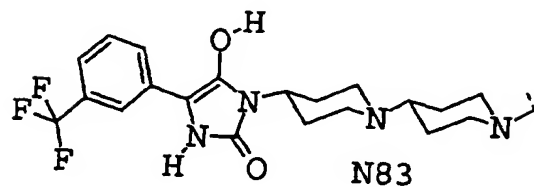
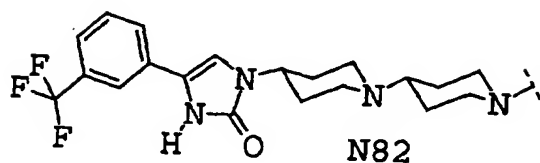
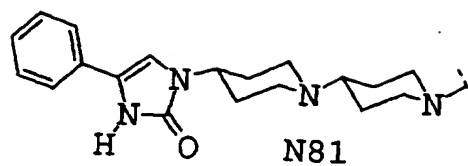
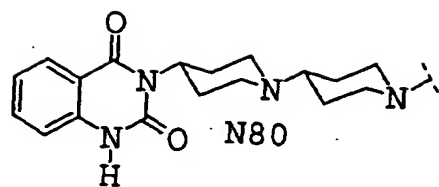


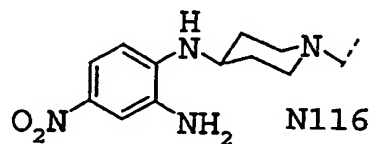
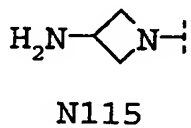
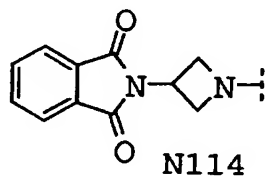
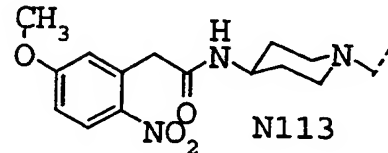
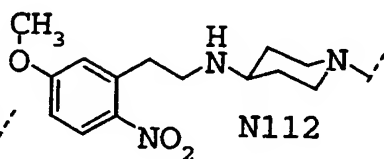
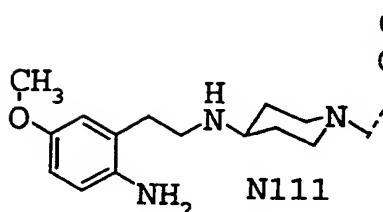
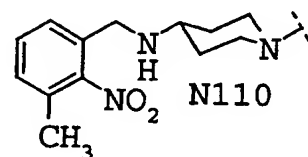
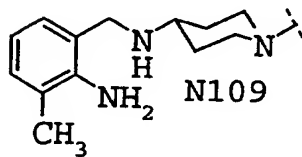
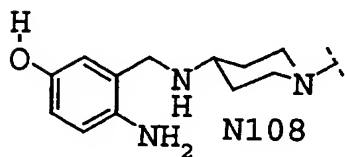
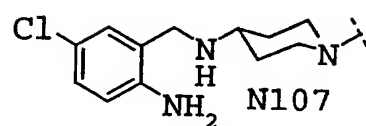
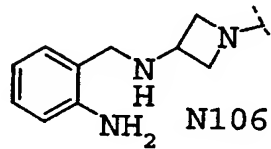
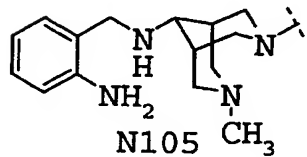
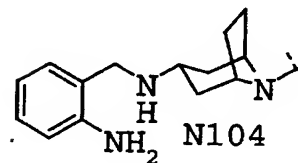
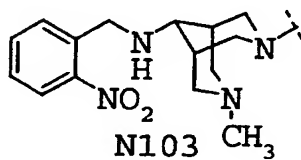
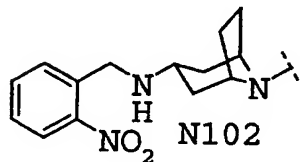
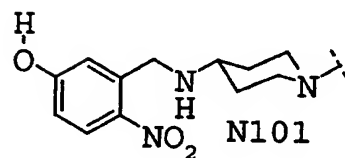
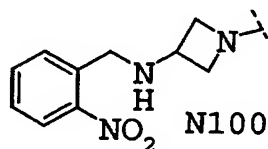
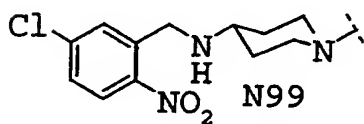
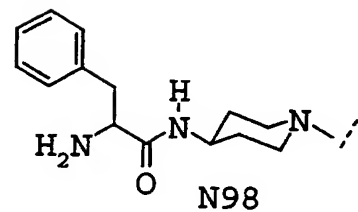
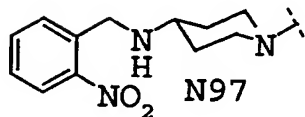
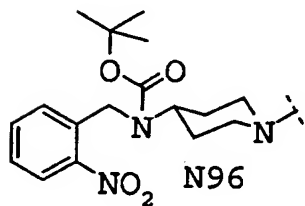
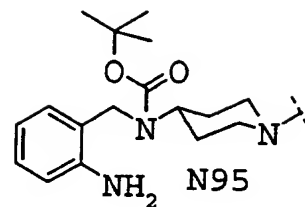
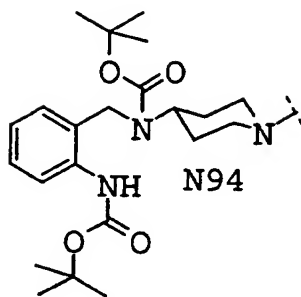
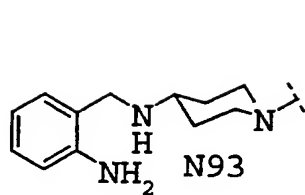


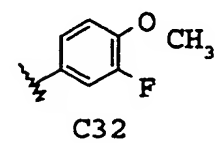
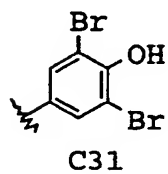
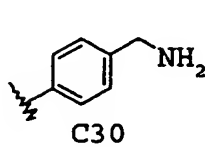
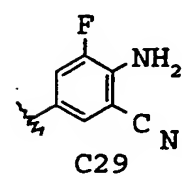
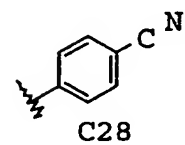
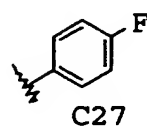
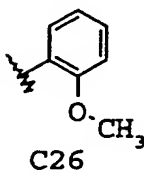
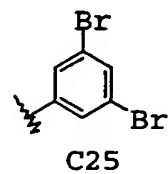
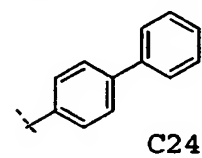
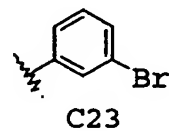
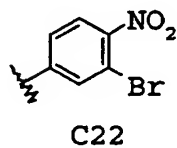
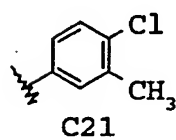
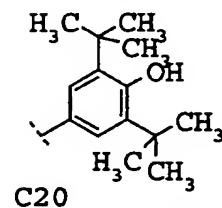
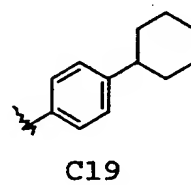
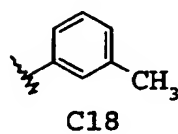
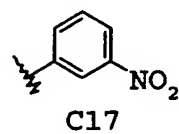
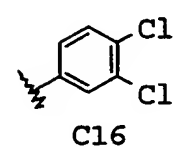
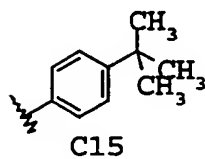
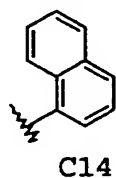
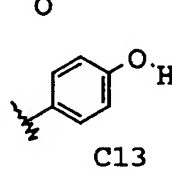
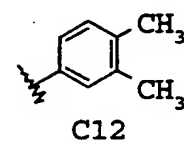
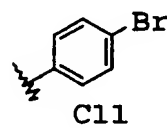
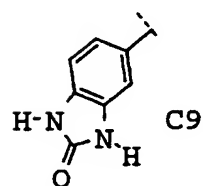
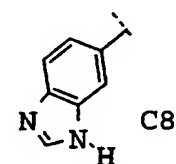
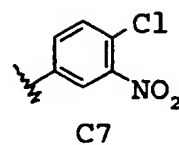
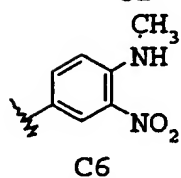
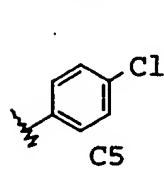
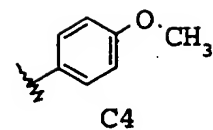
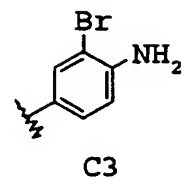
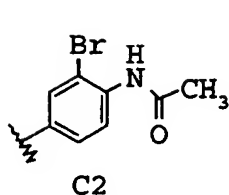
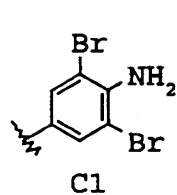


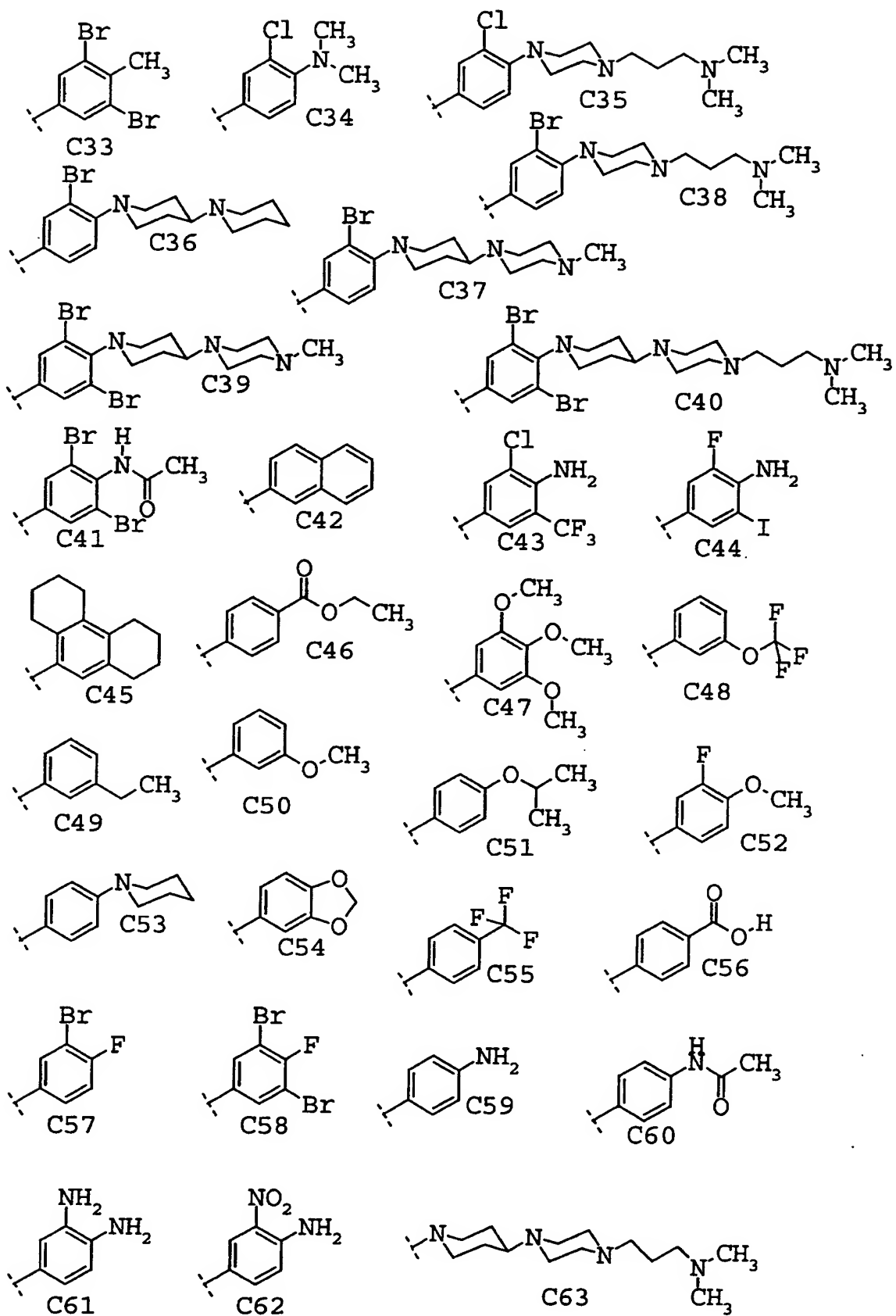
- 81 -



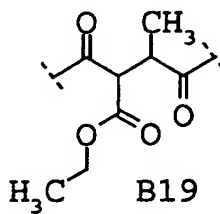
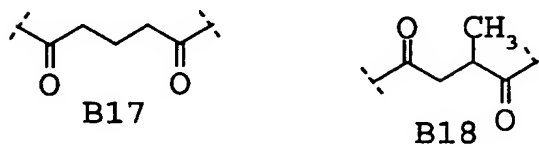
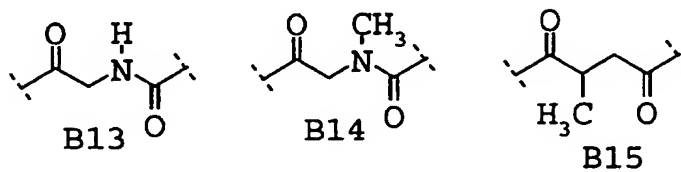
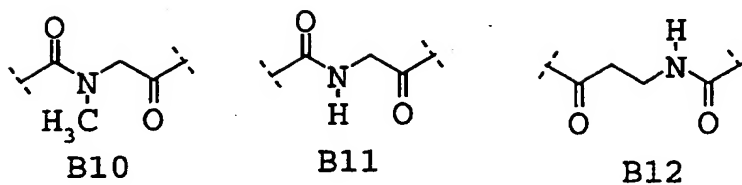
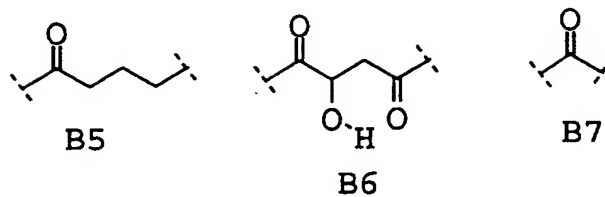
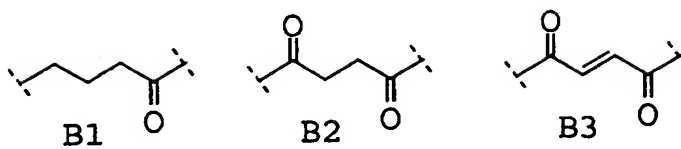








- 86 -

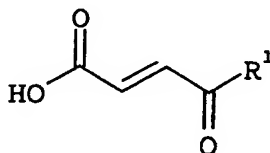


A. Preparation of intermediate compoundsExample A11-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-chloro-1-butanone

115 ml (2.107 mol) of bromine were added dropwise to a solution of 262 g (1.119 mol) of 1-(4-aminophenyl)-4-chloro-1-butanone-hydrochloride (base: m.p. 88-89°C (decomp.), hydrochloride: m.p. 164-167°C (decomp.)), prepared by reacting 1-(4-acetylaminophenyl)-4-chloro-1-butanone with semi-concentrated hydrochloric acid) in a mixture of 1700 ml of glacial acetic acid and 850 ml of water, with stirring and external cooling with ice water. The precipitate formed was suction filtered, washed thoroughly twice with an ice-cold mixture of 170 ml of glacial acetic acid and 85 ml of water, then with pure water, and dried in vacuo at a temperature of 40°C. Yield: 293 g (74 % of theoretical). M.p.: 83-84 C.

Example A2

Preparation of compounds of the general structure:

(E)-4-(3,5-dibromo-4-fluorophenyl)-4-oxo-2-buten-1-ol

A mixture of 14.8 g (50.12 mmol) of 3,5-dibromo-4-fluoroacetophenone, 6.9 g (74.92 mmol) of glyoxylic acid hydrate and 150 ml glacial acetic acid was refluxed for 20 hours. The glacial acetic acid was half distilled off, then water was added to the cooled mixture until a yellow precipitate was formed. The product precipitated was suction filtered, washed

- 88 -

thoroughly with water and dried in a circulating air dryer until a constant weight was achieved. After recrystallisation from ethanol, 4.9 g (28 % of theoretical) of slightly yellowish crystals were obtained, R_f 0.82 (El F).

IR (KBr): 1705, 1672 (C=O)

MS : ESI: $(M-H)^- = 348/350/352$ (Br_2)

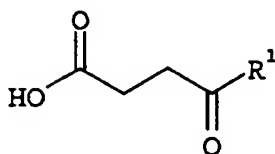
The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	El	Rf	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
OH	B3	C11	condensation with the addition of TsOH	67				1691, 1666 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C12	condensation with the addition of TsOH	72				1695, 1660 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C13	condensation with the addition of TsOH	55			M+ = 192	1695, 1653 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C14	condensation with the addition of TsOH	51				1701, 1668 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C15	condensation with the addition of TsOH	79				1697, 1662 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C16		52			M+ = 243/245/247 (Cl ₂)	1709, 1689, 1666 (C=O)	139-141 (EtOH); yellow
OH	B3	C17	condensation with the addition of TsOH	59				1697, 1678 (C=O)	orange crystals
OH	B3	C18	condensation with the addition of TsOH	66				1705, 1687, 1666 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C19	condensation with the addition of TsOH	86				1699, 1664 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C20	condensation with the addition of TsOH	82				1703, 1660 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C21	condensation with the addition of TsOH	73				1712, 1691, 1664 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C22	condensation with the addition of TsOH	65			M+ = 299/301 (Br)	1707, 1678 (C=O); 1520, 1358 (NO ₂)	orange-yellow crystals
OH	B3	C23	condensation with the addition of TsOH	74				1714, 1697, 1669 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	Rf	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
OH	B3	C26		59				1703.0, 1664.5 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C27		43				1708.8, 1666.4 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C28		15				2233.4 (CN); 1712.7, 1666.4 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C29		4			M+ = 234	3429.2, 3350.2 (NH2); 2229.6 (CN); 1697.3, 1647.1 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C1		21					slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C33	condensation with the addition of TsOH	78				1701, 1674 (C=O)	210-215; yellow crystals
OH	B3	C34	condensation with the addition of TsOH	33			(M+H)+ = 252.1, 254.1 (Cl)	1711, 1662 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C46	condensation with the addition of TsOH	31					yellow crystals
OH	B3	C47	condensation with the addition of TsOH	36					yellow crystals
OH	B3	C48	condensation with the addition of TsOH	64					slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C49	condensation with the addition of TsOH	72					slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C50	condensation with the addition of TsOH	33				1700, 1670 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C51	condensation with the addition of TsOH	54				1701, 1664 (C=O)	yellow crystals
OH	B3	C52	condensation with the addition of TsOH	32				1707, 1662 (C=O)	yellow crystals
OH	B3	C53	condensation with the addition of TsOH	50			M+ = 259	1718 (C=O)	orange-yellow crystals
OH	B3	C54	condensation with the addition of TsOH	34					yellow crystals
OH	B3	C55	condensation with the addition of TsOH	42	E	0.75		1709, 1693, 1668 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C57		23	F	0.69	M+ = 271/274 (Br)	1709, 1689, 1664 (C=O)	138-140; slightly yellowish

Example A3

Preparation of compounds of the general structure:

4-(3-bromo-4-fluorophenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid

A solution of 6.2 g (0.023 mol) of (E)-4-(3-bromo-4-fluorophenyl)-4-oxo-2-butenic acid in a mixture of 200 ml ethanol and 25 ml tetrahydrofuran was hydrogenated in the presence of 1.0 g of 10% platinum/charcoal at ambient temperature under a pressure of 50 psi until the uptake of hydrogen was complete. The residue remaining after the catalyst and solvent had been eliminated crystallised spontaneously and after being washed thoroughly with diisopropylether yielded 1.7 g (27 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals, m.p. 108-110°C and R_f 0.73 (El F).

IR (KBr): 1711, 1687 (C=O) cm^{-1}

MS : ESI: $(M-H)^- = 273/275$ (Br)

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	El	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
OH	B2	C26	H ₂ / R-Ni / EE	51				1708.8, 1664.5 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B2	C27	H ₂ / R-Ni / EE	61				1695.3, 1678.0 (C=O)	88-90 (EtOH/H ₂ O 1/2 v/v)
OH	B2	C29	H ₂ / R-Ni, EE/MeOH (2/3 v/v)	90				3494.8, 3375.2 (NH ₂); 2223.8 (CN); 1714.6, 1674.1 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B2	C16	H ₂ / Pd-C, EtOH/THF (10/1 v/v)	37	F	0.78	ESI: (M-H) ⁻ = 245/247/249 (Cl ₂)	1707, 1689 (C=O)	157-159
OH	B2	C58	H ₂ / Pt-C, EtOH/THF (5/1 v/v)	55	F	0.88	M ⁺ = 351/353/355 (Br ₂)	1705, 1689 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B2	C33	H ₂ / Pt-C, EtOH/THF (10/1 v/v)	99				1701, 1684 (C=O)	colourless crystals

Example A44-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid

A solution of 73.7 g (0.461 mol) of bromine in 150 ml glacial acetic acid was added dropwise at ambient temperature to a solution of 50.0 g (0.213 mol) of 4-(4-acetylamino-phenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid in 500 ml of 80% acetic acid. The mixture was finally heated to 50°C for a further 30 minutes. The precipitate formed after cooling was suction filtered, washed with diethylether and dried in a circulating air dryer at 40°C. The desired compound of m.p. 200-202°C was obtained in a yield of 33.1 g (44 % of theoretical).

MS : M⁺ = 349/351/353 (Br₂)

IR (KBr): 3487.1, 3382.9 (NH₂); 1701.1, 1672.2 (C=O) cm⁻¹

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
OH	B2	C1	2 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH	44			M ⁺ = 349/351/353 (Br ₂)	3487.1, 3382.9 (NH ₂); 1701.1, 1672.2 (C=O)	200-202
H ₃ CO	B2	C1	2 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH / NaOAc	98					colourless crystals (from MeOH)
OH	B2	C2	1 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH / NaOAc	26			M ⁺ = 313/315 (Br)	3315.4 (NH), 1708.8, 1670.3 (C=O)	186-187 (diisopropyl- ether)
OH	B5	C1	2 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH / NaOAc	95				1699.2 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B5	C2	1 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH	79				3265.1 (NH), 1693.4, 1662.5 (C=O)	colourless crystals (from isopropanol / water 1/2 v/v)
OH	B17	C1	2 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH	89				3487, 3388 (NH ₂); 1691, 1662 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B18	C1	2 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH	49	F	0.60		3458.2, 3361.7 (NH ₂); 1739.7 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B15	C1	2 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH / NaOAc	75			ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 363/365/367 (Br ₂)	1743 (C=O)	colourless crystals

Example A5

(3,5-dibromo-4-fluorophenyl)-ethanone and (3-bromo-4-fluorophenyl)-ethanone

69 g (0.5 mol) of p-fluoroacetophenone were added dropwise to 200.0 g (1.5 mol) of finely powdered aluminium chloride with stirring, during which time the mixture heated up to 70°C. It was kept at 75 - 80°C for another 20 minutes and then 184 g (1.15 mol) of bromine were added at this temperature within 2.5 hours. Finally, the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C for another 3 hours. After being cooled and decolorised the mixture was divided between water and tert.butylmethyl ether. Working up the organic phase yielded 130 g of a brownish-black oil which was separated into 2 fractions on silica gel using toluene as eluant:

- a) 41.2 g (28 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals, m.p. 59-62°C and R_f = 0.53 (toluene), which were identified as 1-(3,5-dibromo-4-fluorophenyl)-1-ethanone by spectroscopy.

- 93 -

IR (KBr): 1685 (C=O) cm^{-1} MS : $M^+ = 294/296/298$ (Br_2)

b) 46.0 g (42 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals, m.p. 52-55°C and $R_f = 0.41$ (toluene), which were identified as 1-(3-bromo-4-fluorophenyl)-1-ethanone by spectroscopy.

IR (KBr): 1682 (C=O) cm^{-1} MS : $M^+ = 216/218$ (Br)

The following was obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
-	H_3CCO	C33	$\text{Br}_2 / \text{AlCl}_3$	76		1685 (C=O)	94-98 (isopropanol)

Example A6 γ -oxo-1H-benzimidazol-5-butanoic acid

Prepared analogously to Example 5 from methyl γ -oxo-1H-benzimidazol-5-butanoate, lithium hydroxide and water in the presence of tetrahydrofuran in a yield of 78 % of theoretical. Colourless crystals, m.p. 251-255°C (decomp.).

IR (KBr): 1672.2 (C=O) cm^{-1}

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
OH	B2	C1	NaOH / dioxane / H_2O	90	3485.2, 3382.9 (NH_2); 1701.1, 1672.2 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B2	C41	NaOH / dioxane / H_2O	89	3247.9 (NH); 1710.8, 1689.5 (C=O)	
H_3CO	B14	C1	NaOH / dioxane / H_2O	55		
OH	B2	C45	NaOH / MeOH / H_2O	96	1697, 1674 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B2	C9	LiOH / THF / H_2O	99	3356.6, 3223.2 (NH); 1718.5, 1689.5, 1660.6 (C=O)	colourless crystals

Example A74-(3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid

A solution of 3.5 g (0.01 mol) of 4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid in 50 ml of 1N aqueous sulphuric acid was treated dropwise with a solution of 0.76 g (0.011 mol) of sodium nitrite in 10 ml of water while maintaining a reaction temperature of -5 to 0°C. The mixture was stirred for a further 30 minutes at a temperature of 0°C, then 50 ml of hypophosphorous acid were added dropwise while maintaining the same temperature and stirred for another 1 hour at a temperature of 0°C. The mixture was decolorised and a colourless crystalline substance was precipitated. The mixture was diluted with 100 ml of water, the precipitate formed was suction filtered, washed thoroughly with water and then dried in a circulating air dryer. 3.1 g (92 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained, m.p. 137-138°C.

IR (KBr): 1705.0 (C=O) cm^{-1}

MS : $M^+ = 334/336/338$ (Br_2)

Example A81-[[1.4']bipiperidiny-4-yl]-1,3-dihydro-4-(3-trifluoromethylphenyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone-bis-(trifluoroacetate)

Prepared analogously to Example 7 from 1-[1'-(dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-[1.4']bipiperidiny-4-yl]-1,3-dihydro-4-(3-trifluoromethylphenyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone and trifluoroacetic acid in the presence of dichloromethane as solvent in a yield of 71 % of theoretical. Colourless crystals.

IR (KBr): 1679.7 (C=O) cm^{-1}

MS : $M^+ = 394$

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
N87	H	-	CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	97				1701.1, 1674.1 (C=O)	amorphous bis- (trifluoroacetate)
N81	H	-	CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	47			M ⁺ = 326	1678 (C=O)	amorphous bis- (trifluoroacetate)
N93	B2	C1	from N94-B2-C1 with CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	59			M ⁺ = 536/538/540 (Br ₂)		Colourless crystalline trifluoroacetate
N89	H	-	CF ₃ CO ₂ H	77			M ⁺ = 288	1662.5 (C=O); 1207.4, 1176.5, 1132.1 (trifluoroacetate)	Colourless crystalline trifluoroacetate
N4	H	-	CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	37				3292.3 (NH); 1714.6 (C=O); 1516.0, 1494.7, 1334.7 (NO ₂)	
N85	H	-	CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	99				1712, 1676 (C=O)	Colourless crystalline trifluoroacetate
N86	H	-	CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	96					Colourless crystalline bis- (trifluoroacetate)
N98	CH ₂ Ph	-	from Boc-N98-CH ₂ Ph and CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	92	D	0.68		3485, 3379 (NH, NH ₂); 1670.3 (C=O)	Colourless crystalline bis- (trifluoroacetate), from diisopropylether / ethanol 9/1 v/v
N93	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N95-CH ₂ Ph and CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	99	D	0.74			

Example A9

4-amino-3-bromobenzenebutanoic acid

A mixture of 0.13 g (0.008662 mol) of 4-acetylamino-3-bromobenzenebutanoic acid and 10 ml of conc. hydrochloric acid was refluxed for 24 hours. The colourless, needle-shaped crystals of R_f 0.53 (eluant: dichloromethane/methanol 9/1 v/v) precipitated after cooling were identified by spectroscopy as the hydrochloride of the desired 4-amino-3-bromobenzenebutanoic acid. The crystals were dissolved in a little water, and the solution formed was adjusted to pH 6 using concentrated potassium carbonate solution. The

precipitate was suction filtered, washed with water and dried in a circulating air dryer at 60°C. Yield: 1.35 g (60 % of theoretical).

IR (KBr): 3440.8, 3357.9 (NH); 1693.4 (C=O) cm^{-1}

The following was obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
OH	B17	C59	conc. HCl	92				3464, 3352 (NH); 1705, 1653 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B18	C59	conc. HCl	92	I	0.66		3483.2, 3398.4, 3375.2 (NH ₂); 1705.0, 1656.8 (C=O)	170-172 (water)
OH	B15	C59	from ethyl 4-(4-aminophenyl)-2-ethoxycarbonyl-3-methyl-4-oxobutanoate; ethanolic HCl/ semiconc. HCl 5/2 v/v	60	F	0.8	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 208	1712, 1689 (C=O)	

Example A10

3-{1-[4-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-
3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

Prepared analogously to Example 2 from 3,4-dichloro- γ -oxobenzenebutanoic acid and 3-(4-piperidinyl)-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone in the presence of TBTU in a yield of 73 % of theoretical. Colourless crystals, m.p. 224-226°C and R_f 0.15 (El EE).

IR (KBr): 1666 (C=O) cm^{-1}

MS : ESI: (M+H)⁺ = 482/484/486 (Cl₂)

The following were prepared accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
N10	B2	C57	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	73	G	0.75	M ⁺ = 487/489 (Br); ESI: (M+Na) ⁺ = 510/512 (Br); (2M+Na) ⁺ = 997/999/1001 (Br)	3205 (NH); 1666, 1645 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N10	B2	C58	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	78	F	0.82	ESI: (M+Na) ⁺ = 588/590/592 (Br ₂)	1660 (C=O)	212-215
N94	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	66	H	0.65	M ⁺ = 736/738/740 (Br ₂)	3469, 3357 (NH, NH ₂); 1751, 1691, 1649 (C=O)	
N89	Boc	-	from N10-H and N-Boc-glycine, THF/DMF 1/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	76			M ⁺ = 388	3427.3, 3321.2 (NH, NH ₂); 1722.3, 1666.4, 1645.2 (C=O)	272-275
N88	Ph ₂ CH	-	from N10-H and 1-benzhydryl-azetidine-3-carboxylic acid; THF as solvent; DIEA as base	64			M ⁺ = 480	1664.5 (C=O)	hydrochloride: 164-165

Example A114-acetylamino benzenebutanoic acid

Prepared analogously to Example 10, but using ethanol as solvent, from 4-aminobenzenebutanoic acid and acetic anhydride in a yield of 62 % of theoretical. Colourless crystals.

IR (KBr): 3342.4 (NH); 1714.6, 1643.4 (C=O) cm⁻¹

The following was obtained accordingly, but in the absence of a solvent and using p-toluenesulphonic acid as catalyst:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
H ₃ CO	B2	C41	Ac ₂ O/TsOH/130°C	38	M ⁺ = 405/407/409 (Br ₂)		colourless crystals

Example A123-[1'-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-5-(phenylmethyl)-imidazolidin-2,4-dione

A mixture of 5.5 g (20.2 mmol) of 3-(4-piperidinyl)-5-(phenylmethyl)-imidazolidin-2,4-dione, 4.0 g (20.1 mmol) of 1-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-4-piperidinone, 8 ml (20 mmol) of titanium(IV)-isopropoxide and 100 ml of anhydrous ethanol was stirred for 1 hour at ambient temperature. Then 0.89 g (13.45 mmol) of 95% sodium cyanoborohydride was added, the mixture was adjusted to pH 5 by the dropwise addition of glacial acetic acid and stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The mixture was stirred into 200 ml of water and freed from the precipitate formed. The filtrate was evaporated down in vacuo until no more ethanol passed over, the aqueous phase remaining was made alkaline with sodium hydroxide and extracted exhaustively with dichloromethane. Conventional working up of the extracts yielded 5.0 g (54 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals.

IR (KBr): 1772, 1712 (C=O) cm^{-1}

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
N86	Boc	-	from N65-H and N-Boc-4-piperidinone	6		1682, 1632 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N78	CH_2Ph	-	from N10-H and N-benzyl-3-pyrrolidinone	33	$M^+ = 390$	3305 (NH); 1666 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N77	Boc	-	from N12-H and N-Boc-4-piperidinone	38	$M^+ = 426$	3435 (NH); 1684 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N82	Boc	-	from N22-H and N-Boc-4-piperidinone	86	$M^+ = 494$	1676, 1645 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N103	CH_2Ph	-	from o-nitrobenzylamine and 7-methyl-3-(phenylmethyl)-3,7-diazabicyclo[3.3.1]nonan-9-one	35	$M^+ = 380$	3417.7 (NH); 1668.3 (C=O); 1355.9 (NO_2)	pale yellow oil

Example A13N-(2-aminophenylmethyl)-N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine

A solution of 60.6 g (278 mmol) of di-tert.butyldicarbonate in 400 ml of dioxane was added dropwise, within two hours, to a mixture of 80.0 g (270.8 mmol) of N-(2-aminophenylmethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine, 39.2 ml (280 mmol) of triethylamine, 500 ml of dioxane and 450 ml of water, while maintaining a reaction temperature of 5-10°C. The mixture was stirred for a further 3 hours while cooling externally with ice water, then for 60 hours at ambient temperature. The dioxane was distilled off *in vacuo*, and the aqueous residue was extracted exhaustively with a total of 1 l of ethyl acetate. The combined ethyl acetate extracts were washed once with 200 ml of water, twice with 250 ml of a saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and once with 200 ml of water, dried over sodium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation *in vacuo*. The brownish oil remaining was taken up in 150 ml of diisopropylether and when left to stand colourless crystals were precipitated after about 15 hours, which were then suction filtered and dried. Yield: 31.5 g (29 % of theoretical).

IR (KBr): 3438.8, 3363.7 (NH, NH₂); 1666.4, 1639.4 (C=O) cm⁻¹

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f
N96	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N97-CH ₂ Ph and Boc ₂ O	98	K	0.81
N94	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N95-CH ₂ Ph and Boc ₂ O	98		
N71	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N72-CH ₂ Ph and Boc ₂ O	11		

Example A144-dimethylamino-3-chloroacetophenone

A mixture of 9.45 g (0.05 mol) of 3,4-dichloroacetophenone, 6.2 ml (0.1 mol) of dimethylamine and 2 ml of DIEA was stirred for 20 hours in an autoclave and at a reaction temperature of 120°C. After cooling the reaction mixture was divided between dichloromethane and water, the organic phase was washed with saturated sodium chloride solution, dried over sodium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation. The residue remaining was purified by column chromatography on silica gel, eluting first with toluene, then with tert.butyl-methyl ether. The appropriate eluates were combined and after working up in the usual way yielded 5.6 g (57 % of theoretical) of the desired substance as a colourless oil.

IR (KBr): 1678 (C=O) cm^{-1}

MS : $(M+H)^+ = 198/200$ (Cl); $(M+Na)^+ = 220/222$ (Cl);
 $(2M+Na)^+ = 417/419$ (Cl)

The following was obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [°C]
N116	Boc	-	from 1-(dimethylethoxy-carbonyl)-4-piperidineamine, 2-fluoro-5-nitroaniline and K_2CO_3 in DMSO / H_2O 4/1 v/v	100			reddish-brown oil
N4	CH_2Ph	-	from 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine, N-(dimethylethoxy-carbonyl)-2-fluoro-5-nitroaniline in DMSO / 100°C	82	$M^+ = 352$		yellow crystals

Example A151-(Diphenylmethyl)-3-[(2-nitrophenylmethyl)amino]-azetidine

A mixture of 45.0 g (0.189 mol) of 3-amino-1-(diphenylmethyl)-azetidine, 28.7 g (0.190 mol) of 2-nitrobenzaldehyde and 280 ml of methanol was stirred for 3 hours at ambient

- 101 -

temperature. Then 7.4 g (0.196 mol) of sodium borohydride were added followed, after a further 2 hours, by another 6.0 g of sodium borohydride and 300 ml of methanol and after a further 16 hours by 4.0 g of sodium borohydride, and the mixture was stirred for a further 4 hours at ambient temperature. The mixture was concentrated by evaporation in vacuo and the residue was treated with 200 ml dichloromethane and 200 ml of water. It was filtered, the methylene chloride phase was dried over sodium sulphate and freed from solvent. The residue was purified by chromatography on silica gel (30-60 μ m) using dichloromethane/EE/MeOH/cyclohexane/conc. ammonia (59/25/7.5/7.5/1 v/v/v/v/v) as eluant, then on silica gel using dichloromethane/EE (1/1 v/v) as eluant. After the appropriate fractions had been worked up, 20.0 g (28 % of theoretical) of the desired compound were obtained in the form of a pale yellow oil.

IR (KBr): 1342 (NO_2) cm^{-1}

MS : ESI: $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+ = 374$; $(\text{M}+\text{Na})^+ = 396$

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	MS	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
N97	CH_2Ph	-	from 2-nitrobenzaldehyde, 4-amino-1-benzylpiperidine and NaBH_4 / MeOH	91		pale yellow oil
N99	CH_2Ph	-	from 5-chloro-2-nitrobenzaldehyde, 4-amino-1-benzylpiperidine and NaBH_4 / MeOH	92		pale yellow oil
N101	CH_2Ph	-	from 5-hydroxy-2-nitrobenzaldehyde, 4-amino-1-benzylpiperidine and NaBH_4 / MeOH	81	$\text{M}^+ = 341$	182; pale yellow crystals
N102	CH_2Ph	-	from 2-nitrobenzaldehyde, 8-(phenylmethyl)-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1]oct-3-ylamine and NaBH_4 / MeOH	76	$\text{M}^+ = 351$; ESI: $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+ = 352$	pale yellow oil
N110	CH_2Ph	-	from 3-methyl-2-nitrobenzaldehyde, 4-amino-1-benzylpiperidine and NaBH_4 / MeOH	100		

Example A163-[(2-aminophenylmethyl)amino]-1-(diphenylmethyl)-azetidine

A solution of 20.0 g (0.5355 mol) of 1-(diphenylmethyl)-3-[(2-nitrophenylmethyl)amino]-azetidine in 200 ml of methanol was hydrogenated in the presence of 4 g of 5% rhodium/charcoal for 5 hours at ambient temperature. The catalyst was filtered off, the filtrate was concentrated by evaporation in vacuo. 17.7 g (96 % of theoretical) of a colourless, highly viscous oil were obtained, which was further processed without any additional purification.

R_f = 0.75 (dichloromethane/EE/MeOH/cyclohexane/conc. ammonia
59/25/7.5/7.5/1 v/v/v/v/v)

MS: M^+ = 343; ESI: $(M+H)^+$ = 344; $(M+Na)^+$ = 366

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R_f	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
N93	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N97-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	97	D	0.64		colourless oil
N104	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N102-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	68				colourless oil
N105	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N103-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	94				colourless oil
N107	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N99-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	95	D	0.74		colourless oil
N95	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N96-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	38	D	0.87		colourless crystals
N108	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N101-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	99	D	0.47	3338 (NH)	colourless crystals
H ₃ CO	B2	C61	from H ₃ CO-B2-C62, H ₂ , R-Ni, EE	95			3458.2, 3408.0, 3357.9 (NH ₂); 1732.0, 1706.9, 1658.7 (C=O)	117
N109	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N110-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	98	D	0.42		colourless oil
HO	B2	C10	from HO-B2-C7, H ₂ , Pt-C, MeOH	20			3475.5, 3377.2 (NH ₂); 1716.5, 1679.9 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N111	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N112-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	99	D	0.31		

Example A173-{[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-carbonyl}-azetidine-hydrochloride

A solution of 2.07 g (4.0033 mmol) of 1-(diphenylmethyl)-3-{[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]carbonyl}-azetidine-hydrochloride in a mixture of 100 ml of methanol and 2 ml of water was hydrogenated at a temperature of 50°C and in the presence of 0.5 g of 10% palladium/charcoal until the uptake of hydrogen had ended. After removal of the catalyst and solvent 1.36 g (97 % of theoretical) of the desired compound were obtained in the form of a colourless, porous substance.

IR (KBr): 1652.9 (C=O) cm^{-1}

MS : $M^+ = 314$

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [°C]
N53	H	-	from N53-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	83	D	0.07		3433.1, 3323.2 (NH, NH ₂); 1681.8 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N58	H	-	from N58-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	88	D	0.32			colourless, amorphous
N59	H	-	from N59-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	83	D	0.18			colourless oil
N60	H	-	from N60-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH, presumably a mixture of geometric isomers	91					colourless oil
N61	H	-	from N61-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	66	D	0.24			crystals
N71	H	-	from N71-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	91	D	0.15			colourless crystals
N92	H	-	from N92-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	52	D	0.42	$M^+ = 499$	1687.6, 1660.6 (C=O)	colourless oil
N94	H	-	from N94-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	84					colourless, amorphous
N79	H	-	from N79-CHPh ₂ , H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH / 1N aq. HCl (10/1 v/v)	65	D	0.17	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 287	1662 (C=O)	
N76	H	-	from N76-CHPh ₂ , H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH / 1N aq. HCl (2/1 v/v)	20	D	0.22	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 204		

N5	H	-	from N4-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, AcOH	92				3375.2, 3236.4 (NH, NH ₂); 1678.0 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N16	H	-	from N16-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 20% Pd-C, MeOH	99					
N29	H	-	from N29-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	54				3246 (NH); 1658 (C=O)	> 260 (MeOH)
N78	H	-	from N78-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	71	M	0.35		3205 (NH); 1666 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N74	H	-	from N74-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	70	M	0.44	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 276; (M-H) ⁻ = 276; (2M+H) ⁺ = 551; (2M-H) ⁻ = 549	3323, 3222 (NH); 2852, 2833 (OCH ₃); 1658 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N91	H	-	from N91-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	96	D	0.18		1689.5 (C=O); 1367.4, 1155.3 (SO ₂ -N)	colourless, amorphous
-	H	C63	from PhCH ₂ -C63, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	93			ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 255		colourless oil

Example A186-chloro-3,4-dihydro-3-(4-piperidiny)-2(1H)-quinazolinone

2.17 g (15.178 mmol) of 1-chloroethyl chlorocarbonate were added to a solution of 4.5 g (12.645 mmol) of 6-chloro-3,4-dihydro-3-[(1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidiny)-2(1H)-quinazolinone in 100 ml of anhydrous ethylene chloride and the mixture was refluxed for 1 hour. After the addition of 20 ml of methanol the mixture was refluxed for a further 3 hours. It was left to cool, 1.05 ml of 12M hydrochloric acid were added and the resulting mixture was evaporated down in vacuo. The residue was carefully triturated with petroleum ether and with diethylether one after the other. The crystals were taken up in a little water, the solution obtained was made clearly alkaline with sodium hydroxide solution and extracted exhaustively with EE. The combined ethyl acetate extracts were dried over potassium carbonate and brought to dryness in vacuo. The crystals remaining were triturated with diisopropylether and suction filtered. After drying in a circulating air dryer, 3.21 g (96 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained.

Example A19Methyl 4-(1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxobenzimidazol-5-yl)-4-oxobutanoate

A mixture of 20.0 g (0.09 mol) of methyl 4-(3,4-diaminophenyl)-4-oxobutanoate, 16.2 g (0.1 mol) of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole and 250 ml of tetrahydrofuran was heated to 60°C with stirring for 90 minutes. After cooling the mixture was stirred into 500 ml of ice water, the precipitate formed was suction filtered and washed with diethylether. After drying in vacuo 14.85 g (67% of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained.

IR (KBr): 1728.1, 1699.2, 1674.1 (C=O) cm^{-1}

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
N58	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N104-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	18			M ⁺ = 347	1664.5 (C=O)	
N59	CH ₂ Ph	-	mixture of diastereomers, partly separable; from N105-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	22			ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 377		colourless, amorphous
N69	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N69-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	46	D	0.84			colourless crystals (acetone)
N61	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N-[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidiny]-D,L-phenylglycinamide and CDI in DMF	93	D	0.6	M ⁺ = 363	3249.9 (NH); 1764.8, 1708.8 (C=O)	colourless crystals (diisopropylether)
N16	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N109-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	45				1662.5 (C=O)	
N29	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N108-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	50				1664 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N76	CHPh ₂	-	from N106-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	6				1669 (C=O)	colourless crystals (diisopropylether)
N76	CHPh ₂	-	from N106-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	32				3207 (NH); 1660 (C=O)	colourless crystals (diisopropylether)
N74	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N111-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	84	D	0.71			colourless crystals
N4	Boc	-	from N116-Boc and CDI in THF	6	D	0.57	M ⁺ = 362		pale yellow crystals

Example A20

N-[(2-aminocarbonylamino)phenyl)methyl]-N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine

2.0 g (0.03 mol) of sodium cyanate were added to a solution of 7.91 g (0.02 mol) of N-[(2-aminophenyl)methyl]-N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine in a mixture of 5.5 ml glacial acetic acid and 80 ml of water and the mixture was stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The mixture was made slightly alkaline by the addition of saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, then extracted exhaustively with EE. The combined ethyl acetate extracts were washed with water, dried over sodium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation in vacuo. 8.7 g (99 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained, R_f 0.71 (El D), which were further processed without any additional purification.

Example A21

N-{2-{[1,4']bipiperidinyl-1'-ylcarbonylamino}phenylmethyl}-N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidine-amine

A mixture of 2.56 g (15.6 mmol) of CDT, 5.14 g (13 mmol) of N-[(2-aminophenyl)methyl]-N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine and 200 ml of tetrahydrofuran was stirred for 0.5 hours while cooling with ice and then for 30 minutes at ambient temperature. 2.4 g (14.3 mmol) of [1,4']bipiperidinyl were added with stirring and the mixture was refluxed for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with 200 ml of ethyl acetate and the organic phase was washed twice with 150 ml of aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and once with 100 ml of saturated aqueous sodium

- 107 -

chloride solution. After the organic phase had been dried and the solvent eliminated in vacuo the residue was purified by column chromatography (MN-silica gel 60, Macherey-Nagel, 70-230 mesh ASTM, eluant: dichloromethane/isopropanol = 9/1 (v/v)). 5.0 g (65 % of theoretical) of a colourless amorphous product were obtained, R_f 0.5 (El D).

IR (KBr): 1687.6, 1660.6 cm^{-1} (C=O)

Example A22

2-amino-3-[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3,4-dihydro-quinazoline

A solution of 10.0 g (33.85 mmol) of N-[(2-aminophenyl)methyl]-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine in 150 ml of anhydrous ethanol was combined with 4.0 g (37.76 mmol) of bromocyanogen added batchwise. The mixture was left to stand overnight at ambient temperature, the ethanol was eliminated in vacuo and the residue was distributed between dichloromethane and 1N sodium hydroxide solution. After working up in the conventional way, 9.3 g (86 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained, R_f 0.4 (El D), which were further processed without any additional purification.

Example A23

N-[2-(5-methoxy-2-nitrophenyl)ethyl]-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine

34.0 ml (268.2 mmol) of trimethylsilyl chloride were slowly added dropwise to a solution of 27.0 g (70.4 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-nitro-N-[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-benzeneacetamide in 400 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran and then stirred for another 1 hour at ambient temperature. 4.9 g (213.7 mmol) of lithium borohydride were added batchwise,

- 108 -

stirring was continued for another 30 minutes at ambient temperature and then for 4 hours at reflux temperature. After cooling, 25 ml of water and 25 ml of semiconcentrated hydrochloric acid were added dropwise one after the other and the mixture was refluxed for 90 minutes. It was left to stand overnight at ambient temperature, then cooled in an ice bath and the precipitate formed was suction filtered. The aqueous phase of the filtrate was made ammoniacal and extracted exhaustively with EE. The combined ethyl acetate extracts were dried with sodium sulphate, then combined with ethereal hydrogen chloride solution until the precipitation ended. The product precipitated was combined with the earlier precipitate, presumed to be the dihydrochloride of the desired compound, suspended in ethanol and suction filtered. The filter cake was dissolved in 100 ml of water, the solution was made ammoniacal and extracted exhaustively with EE. Conventional working up of the ethyl acetate extracts yielded a pale yellow oil, R_f 0.69 (El D). Yield: 11.3 g (43 % of theoretical).

IR (KBr): 1514, 1338 (NO_2) cm^{-1}

MS : ESI: $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+ = 370$

Example A24

5-methoxy-2-nitro-N-[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-benzene-acetamide

9.24 g (56.98 mmol) of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole were added to a solution of 12.0 g (56.8 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-nitrobenzene-acetic acid in 100 ml of tetrahydrofuran and the mixture was stirred for 40 minutes at a reaction temperature of 40°C. After the addition of 11.6 g (56.88 mmol) of 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine the mixture was heated to 40°C for another hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated by evaporation in

- 109 -

vacuo, the solid residue was digested with 50 ml of water and tert.butylmethylether, suction filtered and dried in a circulating air dryer at 50°C. 19.9 g (91 % of theoretical) of pale yellow crystals were obtained, R_f 0.6 (eluant: dichloromethane/EE/cyclohexane/methanol/conc. ammonia 300/80/25/25/3 v/v/v/v/v).

IR (KBr): 1638 (C=O) cm^{-1}

MS : ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 384$; $(M+Na)^+ = 406$; $(M-H)^- = 382$;
 $(M-H+HCl)^- = 418/420$ (Cl)

Example A25

4-(1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxo-1-benzimidazolyl)-1-{[2-[(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)amino]ethyl]piperidine}

A solution of 12.4 g (55.3 mmol) of 2-bromo-N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-ethylamine in 50 ml tetrahydrofuran was added dropwise to a solution of 12.0 g (55.2 mmol) of 4-(1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxo-1-benzimidazolyl)piperidine and 15.3 ml (110.4 mmol) of triethylamine in 300 ml tetrahydrofuran. The mixture was refluxed for 20 hours and, after cooling, the triethylamine hydrobromide precipitated was eliminated. The remaining solution was concentrated by evaporation *in vacuo*, the residue was dissolved in 1 l of EE, the solution was washed twice with 200 ml of water, dried over sodium sulphate and evaporated down again. 11.7 g (59 % of theoretical) of a colourless, waxy substance were obtained, which was used without any further purification.

IR (KBr): 3382.9 (NH); 1689.5 (C=O) cm^{-1}

Example A26

3-[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-1-(diphenylmethyl)-azetidine

- 110 -

A mixture of 19.7 g (0.0621 mol) of 1-(diphenylmethyl)-3-mesyloxyazetidine, 14.4 g (0.0623 mol) of 3,4-dihydro-3-(4-piperidinyl)-2(1H)-quinazolinone, 100 ml of dimethylformamide and 12 ml of triethylamine was heated to a reaction temperature of 90°C for 4 hours. The initially clear solution increasingly became a crystal slurry. After cooling the precipitate was suction filtered, crystallised once from 20 ml of hot dimethylformamide and the product was washed thoroughly with water and ethanol. After drying in a circulating air dryer 13.8 g (49 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained, R_f 0.76 (El D).

IR (KBr): 1662 (C=O) cm^{-1}

Example A27

N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-N-[(2-methanesulphonylamino-phenyl)-methyl]-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine

1.64 ml (21 mmol) of methanesulphonyl chloride was added dropwise to a solution of 7.91 g (20 mmol) of N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-N-[(2-aminophenyl)methyl]-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine and 3.0 ml (21 mmol) of triethylamine in 100 ml of tetrahydrofuran and the mixture was then kept for 12 hours at ambient temperature. It was then diluted with 100 ml of EE and extracted twice with 70 ml of saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution. The ethyl acetate phase was dried over sodium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation in vacuo. 8.7 g (92 % of theoretical) of a colourless substance were obtained, R_f 0.85 (El D), which were used in the next step without any further purification.

- 111 -

Example A284-(4-acetylamino-phenyl)-2-methyl-4-oxobutanoic acid

22 ml (0.28 mol) of dimethylformamide were added dropwise to 133.34 g (1.0 mol) of finely powdered aluminium chloride within 20 minutes, while cooling externally with ice. After the strongly exothermic reaction died down, 13.517 g (0.1 mol) of acetanilide and 11.413 g (0.1 mol) of methylsuccinic acid anhydride were added all at once and at an initial temperature of 60°C, during which time the mixture heated up to about 80°C. It was kept for another 3 hours at a temperature of 60-70°C, the still hot mixture was stirred into 1 kg of crushed ice, 60 ml of conc. hydrochloric acid were added and the mixture was left to stand overnight at ambient temperature. The precipitate formed was suction filtered and thoroughly washed with water. It was taken up in 150 ml of methanol, stirred for 30 minutes at 50°C, then for another 30 minutes while cooling externally with ice and the precipitate was suction filtered. After drying in a circulating air dryer at 60°C, 10.4 g (42 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained, m.p. 229-231°C and R_f 0.48 (El I).
 IR (KBr): 1714.6, 1662.5 cm^{-1} (C=O)

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R_f	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
H ₃ CO	B2	C45	from octahydro-phenanthrene, 3-methoxycarbonyl-propionylchloride and AlCl ₃ / ethylene chloride	50				1730, 1675 (C=O)	75-77 (petrol)
HO	B17	C60	from acetanilide, glutaric acid anhydride and AlCl ₃ / DMF	12				3336.7 (NH); 1708.8, 1674.1 (C=O)	colourless crystals (MeOH)
H ₃ CCHCl	B7	C60	from acetanilide, 2-chloropropionylchloride and AlCl ₃ / CH ₂ Cl ₂	66	H	0.3	ESI: (M-H) ⁺ = 224/226 (Cl)	1670 (C=O)	

Example A29Ethyl 4-(4-acetylaminophenyl)-2-(ethoxycarbonyl)-3-methyl-4-oxobutanoate

24.407 ml (0.16 mol) of diethyl malonate were added dropwise to a suspension of 7.631 g (0.159 mol) of sodium hydride in 90 ml of anhydrous dimethylformamide under a nitrogen atmosphere, the mixture was heated for 90 minutes to 50°C, then 37.462 g (0.166 mol) of 1-(4-acetylaminophenyl)-2-chloro-1-propanone were added and heating was continued for a further 3 hours to 80°C. After cooling the mixture was stirred into 1 l of ice water, saturated with sodium chloride and extracted exhaustively with ethyl acetate. The combined ethyl acetate extracts were dried over sodium sulphate, filtered over activated charcoal and concentrated by evaporation in vacuo, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel. After working up in the usual way 45.0 g (80 % of theoretical) of a colourless oil were obtained, R_f 0.7 (El: EE).

IR (KBr): 1747, 1732, 1676 cm^{-1} (C=O)

MS : $M^+ = 349$

Example A301-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-2-methylamino-1-ethanone-hydrochloride

A solution of 10.2 g (0.027 mol) of 4-amino-3,5-dibromophenacyl bromide in 100 ml of dichloromethane was heated to 50°C for 4 hours in a vibrating autoclave and in the presence of 3.64 ml (0.062 mol) of methylamine. After cooling the mixture was extracted three times with 50 ml of water, the dichloromethane phase was dried over sodium sulphate, then diluted with 300 ml of diethylether, and ethereal hydrochloric

- 113 -

acid was added dropwise until the precipitation reaction had ended. The mixture was cooled overnight to -15°C , the precipitate was suction filtered and dried in a vacuum drying chamber at 40°C . Yield: 6.0 g (61 % of theoretical).

MS: $M^+ = 320/322/324$ (Br_2); ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 321/323/325$ (Br_2).

The product was used without purification, as the by-product detectable by mass spectroscopy (ESI: $(M_2+H)^+ = 609/611/613/615/617/619$ (Br_4)), presumably *N,N'*-bis-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenacyl)-methylaniline, was not expected to cause any complications in the subsequent reaction.

Example A31

2-amino-1-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1-ethanone-hydrochloride
7.5 g (53.8 mmol) of urotropine were added to a solution of 20.0 g (53.8 mmol) of 4-amino- α ,3,5-tribromoacetophenone in 600 ml of dichloromethane and stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The precipitate formed was suction filtered, washed with dichloromethane and dried in vacuo, then suspended in 600 ml ethanol. The mixture obtained was combined with 100 ml of conc. hydrochloric acid and refluxed for 2½ hours. After cooling the precipitate formed was suction filtered, carefully washed with cold ethanol and dried in vacuo. Yield of colourless crystals: 18.5 g (100 % of theoretical).
IR (KBr): 3477.5, 3431.2, 3323.2 (NH_2); 1679.9 (C=O) cm^{-1}

Example A32

1-(Diphenylmethyl)-3-(phthalimido)-azetidine

A mixture of 75 g (0.235 mol) of 1-(diphenylmethyl)-3-(methanesulphonyloxy)-azetidine, 47.1 g (0.254 mol) of potassium phthalimide and 800 ml of dimethylformamide was refluxed for 1½ hours, during which time a fine precipitate gradually settled out. After cooling the precipitate was

filtered off and the solvent was evaporated off in vacuo, finally under a high vacuum. The colourless residue crystallised when left to stand. Yield: 78.0 g (90 % of theoretical). $R_f = 0.95$ (El N).

Example A33

3-amino-1-(diphenylmethyl)-azetidine

572 ml of 40% aqueous methylamine solution and 300 ml of water were added successively to a suspension of 78.0 g (0.212 mol) of 1-(diphenylmethyl)-3-(phthalimido)-azetidine in 480 ml of ethanol. After 7 days' stirring at ambient temperature a clear solution had formed, which was freed from excess methylamine and ethanol in vacuo. The aqueous solution remaining was extracted exhaustively with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate extracts were dried over sodium sulphate and dried in vacuo. 45.0 g (89 % of theoretical) of a colourless oil were obtained, which was further processed without any additional purification.

Example A34

4-[4-(methylamino)-3-nitrophenyl]-4-oxobutanoic acid

A solution of 20.0 g (0.0776 mol) of 4-(4-chloro-3-nitrophenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid in 200 ml of 40% aqueous methylamine solution was stirred for 3 hours in a sealed vessel. Then the mixture was diluted with the same volume of water and acidified with acetic acid. The product precipitated was suction filtered, thoroughly washed with water and dried at 50°C in a circulating air dryer. 18.5 g (95 % of theoretical) of the desired compound were obtained in the form of yellow crystals.

Example A354-(4-chloro-3-nitrophenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid

While cooling externally with a mixture of ice and common salt, 21.3 g (0.1 mol) of 4-(4-chlorophenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid were added batchwise to 100 ml of fuming nitric acid in such a way that the temperature of the mixture did not exceed 0°C. The mixture was stirred for another 1 hour at an internal temperature of between -5 and 0°C, then stirred into 1 l of ice water, after ½ hour the precipitate was collected on a filter, thoroughly washed with water until free from acid, and the crystalline product was dried in a circulating air dryer. 23.4 g (91 % of theoretical) of pale yellow crystals were obtained.

Example A36Methyl 4-(1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-4-oxobutanoate

75 ml of phosphorus(III)oxychloride were slowly added dropwise, while cooling externally with water, to a solution of 20.0 g (0.09 mol) of methyl 4-(3,4-diaminophenyl)-4-oxobutanoate in 50 ml of formic acid and the mixture was then stirred for another 40 minutes at a reaction temperature of 60°C. It was left to cool, then the mixture was stirred into 500 g of crushed ice while cooling externally with ice and made weakly ammoniacal. It was then extracted exhaustively with ethyl acetate, the combined extracts were dried over magnesium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation in vacuo. 8.29 g (40 % of theoretical) of a colourless, crystalline substance were obtained.

IR (KBr): 1732.0, 1679.9 cm⁻¹ (C=O)

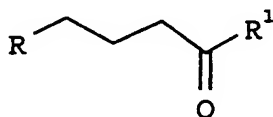
Example A371-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-4-[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-piperazine

To a solution of 27.8 g (0.15 mol) of 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinone and 26.5 g (0.15 mol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-piperazine in 500 ml of tetrahydrofuran were added 200 mg of p-toluenesulphonic acid and 13.5 g (0.225 mol) of glacial acetic acid, followed by 47.7 g (0.225 mol) of sodium triacetoxyborohydride, in small batches, and the mixture was stirred overnight at ambient temperature. 100 ml of water were added dropwise while stirring was continued and after 30 minutes sufficient potassium carbonate was added to produce a precipitate that could be filtered off. It was filtered and the filter cake was washed thoroughly with THF and diethylether in succession. The combined filtrates were concentrated by evaporation *in vacuo*, the residue was purified by column chromatography on 400 g of aluminium oxide (Al₂O₃-ICN, activity stage 3) using EE/MeOH (95/5 v/v) as eluant. A colourless oil, R_f 0.33 (El 0), was obtained in a yield of 35.0 g (68 % of theoretical).

MS: ESI: (M+H)⁺ = 345

B. Preparation of the final compoundsExample 1

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



- 117 -

1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidiny1}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone-hydrochloride
(Item no.1)

A mixture of 30.6 g (0.0861 mol) of 1-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-chloro-1-butanone, 18.6 g (0.0856 mol) of 1-(4-piperidiny1)-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone, 18.2 g (0.172 mol) of anhydrous sodium carbonate, 2.0 g of potassium iodide and 800 ml of methylisobutylketone was refluxed for 130 hours. After cooling the mixture was extracted once with 500 ml of water, the organic phase was dried over sodium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in 50 ml of anhydrous ethanol and the equivalent amount of ethanolic hydrogen chloride solution was added dropwise. After standing for 24 hours at ambient temperature the colourless crystals precipitated were suction filtered and dried in vacuo. Yield: 27.0 g (55 % of theoretical). M.p.: 297-299 C (decomp.) (ethanol/water 95/5 v/v). R_f 0.21 (El A).

$C_{22}H_{24}Br_2N_4O_2 \cdot HCl$ (572.73)

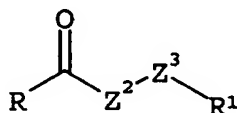
Calc.:	C 46.14	H 4.40	Br 27.90	Cl 6.19	N 9.78
Found:	45.10	4.92	27.65	6.09	9.95

The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	Ex. no.	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]
2	N2	B1	C1	1	DMF/DMSO 2/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	29	A	0.21	m/e = 244; 257; 276	1687.6 (C=O)
3	N3	B1	C1	1	DMSO as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	21	A	0.28	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 549/551/553 (Br ₂)	1695.3 (C=O)
4	N4	B1	C1	1	DMSO as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	48	A	0.53	m/e = 288 / 289	1685.7, 1712.7 (C=O); 1492.8, 1332.7 (NO ₂)
5	N5	B1	C1	1	DMF as solvent; Na ₂ CO ₃ as base	22	B	0.23		3442.7, 3364.5 (NH, NH ₂); 1683.8 (C=O)
10	N10	B1	C1	1	DMF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	3	B	0.5	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 549/551/553 (Br ₂)	1666.4 (C=O)
11	N11	B1	C1	1	acetone/MeCO ^t Bu as solvent; Na ₂ CO ₃ as base	30	B	0.24		1668.3 (C=O)
113	N42	B1	C1	1	DMF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	18	A	0.25	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 607/609/611 (Br ₂)	1703.0 (C=O)

Example 2

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone (Item no. 12)

A mixture of 1.0 g (2.849 mmol) of 4-amino-3,5-dibromo-γ-oxo-benzenebutanoic acid, 1.04 g (2.91 mmol) of 1,3-dihydro-1-(4-piperidinyl)-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone, 0.935 g (2.912 mmol) of TBTU, 1.02 ml (5.77 mmol) of DIEA and 50 ml of tetrahydrofuran was stirred for 1 hour at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with 300 ml of water and acidified slightly with citric acid. The precipitate formed was suction filtered and washed carefully with water, then with 3 ml of tetrahydrofuran, and finally dried in a

circulating air dryer at a temperature of 60°C. 1.3 g (79 % of theoretical) of a colourless, crystalline product were obtained, R_f 0.47 (El A).

IR (KBr): 1679.9 cm^{-1} (C=O)

MS : M^+ = 574/576/578 (Br_2)

The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	El	R_f	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
13	N13	B2	C1	THF/DMF 1/1 as solvent	25	A	0.47	ESI: $(M+H)^+$ = 564/566/568 (Br_2); $(M+Na)^+$ = 586/588/590 (Br_2)	1670.3 (C=O)	> 225
14	N14	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; NEt_3 as base	73	A	0.48	M^+ = 576/578/580 (Br_2)	1697.3 (C=O)	
15	N15	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	67	A	0.48	M^+ = 588/590/592 (Br_2)	1678.0, 1647.1 (C=O)	
16	N16	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	47	A	0.58		1656.8 (C=O)	
17	N16	B2	C2	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	19	A	0.63	M^+ = 540/542 (Br)	1670.3 (C=O)	
18	N10	B2	C2	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	69	A	0.43	M^+ = 526/528 (Br)	1701.1, 1687.6, 1664.5 (C=O)	243 (MeOH)
19	N1	B2	C2	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	61	A	0.39	M^+ = 512/514 (Br)	1685.7 (C=O)	128
21	N12	B2	C2	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	78	B	0.70			243 (MeOH)
25	N10	B2	C4	DMF as solvent; NEt_3 as base	47	B	0.79	M^+ = 421	1674, 1657 (C=O)	171-172 (MeOH)
26	N10	B2	C5	DMF as solvent; NEt_3 as base	68	A	0.40	M^+ = 425/427 (Cl)	1689.5, 1662.5, 1654.8 (C=O)	237-238 (MeOH)
27	N10	B2	C6	DMF as solvent; NEt_3 as base	85	A	0.25	M^+ = 465	1666.4 (C=O)	258-259 (decomp.)
28	N10	B2	C7	DMF as solvent; NEt_3 as base	54	A	0.33	M^+ = 470/472 (Cl)	1689.5, 1668.3, 1631.7 (C=O)	207-209

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
29	N17	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	81	A	0.30	M ⁺ = 622/624/626 (Br ₂)	1654.8 (C=O)	256-258 (acetonitrile)
30	N10	B2	C8	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	59	B	0.53		1652.9, 1633.6 (C=O)	colourless crystals
31	N10	B2	C9	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	88	B	0.71	M ⁺ = 447	1703.0, 1670.3 (C=O)	colourless crystals
32	N18	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	61	A	0.38	M ⁺ = 548/550/552 (Br ₂)	1656.8 (C=O)	colourless crystals
33	N19	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	85	A	0.48	M ⁺ = 592/594/596 (Br ₂)	1664.5 (C=O)	colourless crystals
34	N20	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	83	A	0.50	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 597/599/601 (Br ₂ Cl); (M+Na) ⁺ = 619/621/623/625 (Br ₂ Cl)	1664.5 (C=O)	colourless crystals
35	N10	B2	C10	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	10	A	0.34	M ⁺ = 440/442 (Cl)	1668.3, 1647.1 (C=O)	
36	N21	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	85	A	0.45	M ⁺ = 568/570/572 (Br ₂)	1652.9 (C=O)	colourless crystals
37	N22	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	37	A	0.25	M ⁺ = 642/644/646 (Br ₂)	1685.7 (C=O)	colourless crystals
38	N23	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	6	A	0.18	M ⁺ = 580/582/584 (Br ₂)	1683.8 (C=O)	
39	N24	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	43	A	0.48	M ⁺ = 575/577/579 (Br ₂)	1685.7 (C=O)	
40	N25	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	26	A	0.52		1658.7 (C=O)	
41	N26	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	15	A	0.47	M ⁺ = 642/644/646 (Br ₂)		
42	N27	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	72	A	0.57	M ⁺ = 563/565/567 (Br ₂)	1668 (C=O)	> 250
43	N28	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	53	A	0.48	M ⁺ = 563/565/567 (Br ₂)	1662 (C=O)	> 250
44	N29	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	72	A	0.46	M ⁺ = 578/580/582 (Br ₂)	1651 (C=O)	colourless crystals
45	N10	B3	C11	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	57	A	0.70	M ⁺ = 467/469 (Br)	1664 (C=O)	colourless crystals

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
46	N10	B3	C12	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	77	A	0.68	M ⁺ = 417	1662 (C=O)	colourless crystals
47	N10	B3	C13	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	80	A	0.60	M ⁺ = 405	1655 (C=O)	colourless crystals
48	N10	B3	C14	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	52	A	0.63	M ⁺ = 439		colourless crystals
49	N10	B3	C15	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	50	A	0.72	M ⁺ = 445		colourless crystals
50	N10	B3	C16	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	53	A	0.65	M ⁺ = 457/459/461 (Cl ₂)	1666 (C=O)	colourless crystals
51	N10	B3	C17	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	65	A	0.57	M ⁺ = 434	1668 (C=O)	colourless crystals
52	N10	B3	C18	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	34	A	0.66	M ⁺ = 403	1660 (C=O)	colourless crystals
53	N10	B3	C19	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	59	A	0.73	M ⁺ = 471	1668, 1630 (C=O)	colourless crystals
54	N10	B3	C20	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	46	A	0.77	M ⁺ = 517	1657 (C=O)	colourless crystals
55	N10	B3	C21	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	59	A	0.70	ESI: (M+Na) ⁺ = 460/462 (Cl); (2M+Na) ⁺ = 897/899/901 (2 Cl)	1664, 1639 (C=O)	colourless crystals
56	N10	B3	C22	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	8	A	0.72	M ⁺ = 512/514 (Br)	1664 (C=O)	
57	N10	B3	C23	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	4	A	0.68			
59	N30	B2	C1	THF/DMF 3/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	93	A	0.59	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 561/563/565 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 583/585/587 (Br ₂)		272-274 (decomp.)
60	N10	B5	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	46	A	0.53	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 549/551/553 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 571/573/575 (Br ₂)	1668.3 (C=O)	
61	N31	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	94	A	0.88	M ⁺ = 561/563/565 (Br ₂)	1668.3, 1652.9 (C=O)	246-252
62	N10	B2	C24	THF/DMF 1/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	58	A	0.46	M ⁺ = 467	1678.0, 1658.7 (C=O)	decomp. from about 200

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
63	N32	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	42	A	0.20		1670.3, 1645.2 (C=O)	207 (decomp.)
64	N12	B5	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	31	A	0.24	M ⁺ = 560/562/564 (Br ₂)	1679.9 (C=O)	162.5-163.5 (diisopropyl-ether)
65	N10	B2	C25	THF/DMF 1/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	65	A	0.54	M ⁺ = 547/549/551 (Br ₂)	1666.4 (C=O)	212-214 (EtOH / active charcoal)
66	N10	B2	C26	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	52	A	0.39	M ⁺ = 421	1668.3 (C=O)	174-175 (AcOEt)
67	N10	B2	C27	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	18	A	0.38	M ⁺ = 409	1668.3 (C=O)	164-166 (diisopropyl-ether)
68	N1	B5	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	46	A	0.60	M ⁺ = 534/536/538 (Br ₂)	1703.0 (C=O)	172-173 (diisopropyl-ether)
69	N33	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	65	A	0.76	M ⁺ = 562/564/566 (Br ₂)	1691.5 (C=O)	225-226 (94% EtOH)
70	N10	B5	C2	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	39	A	0.23	M ⁺ = 512/514 (Br)	1666.4 (C=O)	94-98 (diisopropyl-ether)
71	N10	B5	C3	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	76	A	0.48	M ⁺ = 470/472 (Br)	1668.3 (C=O)	181-183 (diisopropyl-ether)
72	N10	B3	C28	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	26	A	0.55		2229.6 (CN); 1668.3 (C=O)	191-193 (EtOH)
74	N10	B6	C29	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	40	A	0.48	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 466; (M+Na) ⁺ = 488	2221.9 (CN); 1635.5 (CON)	148-151
75	N10	B3	C29	by-product of synthesis of Item no. (74)	4	A	0.60	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 448; (M+Na) ⁺ = 470	1666.4 (C=O)	colourless crystals
76	N10	B2	C29	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	49	A	0.44	M ⁺ = 449	2221.9 (CN); 1664.5 (C=O); 1637.5 (CON)	
78	N1	B2	C29	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	47	A	0.14	M ⁺ = 461	1658.7 (C=O)	
79	N34	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	87	A	0.87	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 613/615/617 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 635/637/639 (Br ₂)	1706.9 (C=O)	colourless crystals

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
81	N35	B2	C1	by-product of synthesis of Item no. (80)	15	A	0.37	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 433/435/437 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 455/457/459 (Br ₂); (M-H) ⁻ = 431/433/435 (Br ₂)	1651 (amide-C=O)	
83	N10	B3	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	9	A	0.50	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 561/563/565 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 583/585/587 (Br ₂); (2M+Na) ⁺ = 1144/1146/1148/1150 (Br ₄); (M+NH ₄) ⁺ = 578/580/582 (Br ₂)	1662.5 (C=O)	
84	N12	B3	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	9	A	0.22	M ⁺ = 572/574/576 (Br ₂)	1683.8 (C=O)	
85	N36	B3	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	17	A	0.72	M ⁺ = 346/348/350 (Br ₂)	1674.1 (C=O)	
86	N30	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	12	A	0.42	(M+Na) ⁺ = 582/584/586 (Br ₂)	1651.0 (C=O)	colourless crystals
87	N37	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	18	A	0.64	M ⁺ = 561/563/565 (Br ₂)	1676.0 (C=O)	colourless crystals
100	N76	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	40	A	0.33	M ⁺ = 534/536/538 (Br ₂)	1669 (C=O)	colourless crystals
101	N41	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	38	A	0.22	M ⁺ = 745/747/749/751/753 (Br ₄)	1680 (C=O)	colourless crystals
102	N10	B2	C32	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	77	A	0.25	M ⁺ = 439	1666 (C=O)	169-170 (MeOH)
103	N10	B2	C33	THF/DMF 4/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	42	A	0.50	M ⁺ = 561/563/565 (Br ₂)	1662 (C=O)	colourless crystals
104	N10	B3	C34	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	38	A	0.48	M ⁺ = 466/468 (Cl)	1666, 1657 (C=O)	
115	N1	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	87	A	0.48	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 549/551/553 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 571/573/575 (Br ₂)	3450.4, 3325.1 (NH, NH ₂); 1662.5 (C=O)	
116	N10	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	77	A	0.52	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 563/565/567 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 585/587/589 (Br ₂)	3448.5, 3325.1, 3207.4 (NH, NH ₂); 1662.5 (C=O)	

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
117	N44	B2	C1	THF/DMF 1/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	27	A	0.10	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 567/569/571 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 589/591/593 (Br ₂); (M-H) ⁻ = 567/569/571 (Br ₂)	1679.9 (C=O)	
118	N45	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	73	A	0.58	M ⁺ = 620/622/624 (Br ₂)	1722.3, 1670.3 (C=O)	
120	N47	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	75	A	0.32	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 566/568/570 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 588/590/592 (Br ₂)	3471.7, 3367.5 (NH, NH ₂); 1664.5, 1631.7 (C=O)	
125	N52	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	36	A	0.87	M ⁺ = 600/602/604 (Br ₂)	1652.9 (C=O)	
127	N1	B12	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	71	A	0.32	M ⁺ = 563/565/567 (Br ₂)	1701, 1674, 1624 (C=O)	
128	N10	B12	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	81	A	0.25	M ⁺ = 577/579/581 (Br ₂)	1653, 1635 (C=O)	
129	N1	B13	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	29	A	0.48	M ⁺ = 549/551/553 (Br ₂)	1697, 1632 (C=O)	
130	N10	B13	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	27	A	0.48		1655 (C=O)	
131	N12	B13	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	26	A	0.20	M ⁺ = 575/577/579 (Br ₂)	1674 (C=O)	
132	N53	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	20	A	0.66	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 680/682/684 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 702/704/706 (Br ₂)	1689.5 (C=O)	
133	N10	B2	C41	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	65	A	0.25	M ⁺ = 604/606/608 (Br ₂)	1697.3, 1639.4 (C=O)	
136	N12	B12	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	10	A	0.10	M ⁺ = 589/591/593 (Br ₂)	1678 (C=O)	
137	N1	B14	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	88	A	0.25	M ⁺ = 563/565/567 (Br ₂)	1703 (C=O)	
138	N10	B14	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	69	A	0.20	M ⁺ = 577/579/581 (Br ₂)	1662 (C=O)	
139	N56	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	33	A	0.08	M ⁺ = 568/570/572 (Br ₂)	3456.2 (NH, NH ₂); 1671.1, 1651.0 (C=O)	
143	N1	B2	C42	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	86	A	0.44	M ⁺ = 427	1689.5 (C=O)	
144	N10	B2	C42	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	84	A	0.47	M ⁺ = 441	1668.3 (C=O)	

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
145	N1	B2	C14	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	81	A	0.45	M ⁺ = 427	1695.3, 1641.3 (C=O)	
146	N10	B2	C14	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	52	A	0.52	M ⁺ = 441	1666.4 (C=O)	
147	N10	B15	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	73	A	0.63	M ⁺ = 576/578/580 (Br ₂)	3485.2 (NH, NH ₂); 1670.3 (C=O)	
149	N58	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	57	A	0.72	M ⁺ = 588/590/592 (Br ₂)	1670.3 (C=O)	
150	N59	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	53	B	0.20	(M+H) ⁺ = 618/620/622 (Br ₂)	1674.1 (C=O)	
151	N60	B2	C1	by-product of synthesis of Item no. (150)	12	A	0.11	M ⁺ = 617/619/621 (Br ₂)	1672.2 (C=O)	
152	N61	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	62	A	0.70	M ⁺ = 604/606/606 (Br ₂)	1705 (C=O)	
153	N62	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	63	A	0.76	M ⁺ = 590/592/594 (Br ₂)	1712.7, 1674.1 (C=O)	
154	N63	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	70	A	0.89	M ⁺ = 598/600/602 (Br ₂)	1672.2 (C=O)	
155	N64	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	71	A	0.21	M ⁺ = 592/594/592 (Br ₂)	1680, 1647 (C=O)	
157	N65	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	90	A	0.30	M ⁺ = 624/626/628 (Br ₂)	1683.8 (C=O)	
158	N66	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	64			M ⁺ = 650/652/654 (Br ₂)	1674.1 (C=O)	
159	N67	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	77	A	0.20	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 605/607/609 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 627/629/631 (Br ₂)	1682 (C=O)	
160	N68	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	80	A	0.30		1684 (C=O)	
161	N69	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	98	A	0.55	M ⁺ = 596/598/600 (Br ₂ Cl)	1670 (C=O)	
164	N70	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	20	A	0.35	M ⁺ = 599/601/603 (Br ₂)	1695, 1678 (C=O)	
165	N10	B2	C45	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	71	A	0.64	M ⁺ = 499	1658 (C=O)	
168	N10	B3	C24	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	37	A	0.68	M ⁺ = 465	1658 (C=O)	

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
169	N10	B3	C46	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	61	A	0.65	M ⁺ = 461	3473 (NH, NH ₂); 1705, 1658 (C=O)	
170	N10	B3	C47	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	52	A	0.43	M ⁺ = 479	1668 (C=O)	
171	N10	B3	C48	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	60	A	0.62	M ⁺ = 473	1658 (C=O)	
172	N10	B3	C49	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	32	A	0.65	M ⁺ = 417	1660 (C=O)	
173	N10	B3	C50	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	33	A	0.58	M ⁺ = 419	1658 (C=O)	
174	N10	B3	C51	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	38	A	0.59	M ⁺ = 447	1671, 1658 (C=O)	
175	N10	B3	C52	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	64	A	0.43	M ⁺ = 437	1664 (C=O)	
176	N10	B3	C53	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	23	A	0.54	M ⁺ = 472	1666 (C=O)	
177	N10	B3	C54	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	14	A	0.61	M ⁺ = 433	1658 (C=O)	
178	N10	B3	C55	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	10	A	0.71	M ⁺ = 457		
180	N10	B17	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	55	A	0.50	M ⁺ = 576/578/580 (Br ₂)	3471, 3352 (NH, NH ₂); 1664 (C=O)	
181	N71	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	60	A	0.94	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 662/664/666 (Br ₂)	1674, 1637 (C=O)	
185	N10	B18	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	48	A	0.66	M ⁺ = 576/578/580 (Br ₂)	1662 (C=O)	
186	N74	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	90	A	0.51	ESI: (M-H) ⁻ = 606/608/610 (Br ₂)	1660 (C=O)	
187	N75	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	95	A	0.60	ESI: (M-H) ⁻ = 575/577/579 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 599/601/603 (Br ₂); M ⁺ = 576/578/580 (Br ₂)	1658 (C=O)	
188	N91	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	19			ESI: (M+Na) ⁺ = 737/739/741 (Br ₂)	1681.8, 1645.2 (C=O)	

- 127 -

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	El	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
189	N92	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	45			ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 831/833/835 (Br ₂)	3458.2, 3381.0, 3338.6 (NH, NH ₂); 1652.9 (C=O)	

Example 3

4-amino-3,5-dibromo-N-{2-[4-(1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxo-1-benzimidazolyl)-1-piperidinyl]ethyl}-benzamide (Item no. 58)

A mixture of 0.279 g (1.0 mmol) of 4-amino-3,5-dibromobenzoic acid, 0.489 g (1.0 mmol) of 1-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone, 0.321 g (1.0 mmol) of TBTU, 2 ml of triethylamine and 50 ml DMF was stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with 300 ml of water. The precipitate formed was purified by column chromatography (MN-silica gel 60, Macherey-Nagel, 70-230 mesh ASTM, eluant: ethyl acetate/methanol = 95/5/ (v/v/)). After the appropriate eluates had been worked up, 200 mg (37 % of theoretical) of a colourless crystalline product were obtained, m.p. 228-229°C and R_f 0.12 (El A).

IR (KBr): 3468, 3364, 3318 (NH, NH₂); 1697 cm⁻¹ (C=O)

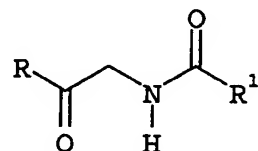
The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
80	N77	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	23	B	0.23	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 646/648/650 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 668/670/672 (Br ₂)	1668.3 (C=O)	
82	N77	B7	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	25	B	0.37	M ⁺ = 589/591/593 (Br ₂)	1670.3 (C=O)	
88	N88	B7	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	47	A	0.17	M ⁺ = 589/591/593 (Br ₂)	1664.5, 1645.2 (C=O)	
89	N88	B7	C31	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	23	A	0.13	ESI: (M-H) ⁻ = 589/591/593 (Br ₂)	1652.9 (C=O)	colourless crystals
90	N80	B7	C1	by-product of synthesis of Item no. 82	10	B	0.46	M ⁺ = 603/605/607 (Br ₂)	1710.6, 1660.4 (C=O)	
91	N81	B7	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	8	B	0.37	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 602/604/606 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 624/626/628 (Br ₂)	1678 (C=O)	
92	N77	B7	C31	by-product of synthesis of Item no. 93	5	B	0.28	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 591/593/595 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 613/615/617 (Br ₂)	1672 (C=O)	
93	N80	B7	C31	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	2	B	0.37	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 605/607/609 (Br ₂); (M-H) ⁻ = 603/605/607 (Br ₂)		
94	N81	B7	C31	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	12	B	0.29	M ⁺ = 602/604/606 (Br ₂); ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 603/605/607 (Br ₂); (M-H) ⁻ = 601/603/605 (Br ₂)	1682 (C=O)	
95	N82	B7	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	15	B	0.44	M ⁺ = 669/671/673 (Br ₂)	3483, 3386 (NH, NH ₂); 1689 (C=O)	
96	N83	B7	C1	by-product of synthesis of Item no. 95	8	A	0.19	M ⁺ = 685/687/689 (Br ₂)	1714 (C=O)	
97	N84	B7	C1	by-product of synthesis of Item no. 95	3	A	0.14	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 674/676/678 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 696/698/700 (Br ₂)	3481, 3375 (NH, NH ₂); 1693 (C=O)	

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
98	N82	B7	C31	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	15	B	0.34	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 671/673/675 (Br ₂); (M-H) ⁻ = 669/671/673 (Br ₂)	1684 (C=O)	
99	N79	B7	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	44	A	0.28	M ⁺ = 561/563/565 (Br ₂)	1639 (C=O)	149-151 (decomp.) (AcOEt)
142	N87	B7	C43	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	37	A	0.12	M ⁺ = 482/484 (Cl)	1689, 1634 (C=O)	
156	N89	B7	C44	THF/DMF 1/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	58	A	0.43	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 552; (M+Na) ⁺ = 574	3332.8 (NH, NH ₂); 1660.8 (C=O)	
162	N85	B7	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	32	A	0.12	M ⁺ = 631/633/635 (Br ₂)	3440 (NH, NH ₂); 1707 (C=O)	colourless crystals
163	N86	B7	C1	THF/DMF 3/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	25	B	0.44	M ⁺ = 651/653/655 (Br ₂)	3464, 3373 (NH, NH ₂); 1685 (C=O)	
166	N78	B7	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	32	A	0.19	M ⁺ = 575/577/579 (Br ₂)	3411, 3319 (NH, NH ₂); 1657 (C=O)	
167	N78	B7	C16	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	58	A	0.13	M ⁺ = 472/474/476 (Cl ₂)	1664 (C=O)	

Example 4

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



N-{2-[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-2-oxoethyl}-2-naphthalenecarboxamide (Item no. 140)

A mixture of 0.5 g (1.243 mmol) of 3-[1-(2-amino-1-oxoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone-trifluoroacetate, 0.33 g (1.731 mmol) of 2-naphthoyl chloride, 0.5 ml of triethylamine and 100 ml acetonitrile was stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The colourless crystals precipitated were suction filtered, thoroughly washed with

- 130 -

water and dried in vacuo. Yield: 0.47 g (85 % of theoretical).

R_f 0.34 (El A).

IR (KBr): 3386.8 (NH, NH₂); 1670.3, 1633.6 (C=O)

MS : M^+ = 442

The following was prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R_f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]
141	N89	B7	C14	acetonitrile as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	46	A	0.34	M^+ = 442	1654.8 (C=O)

Example 5

(E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(4-carboxyphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 179)

A solution of 0.24 g (10.0 mmol) of lithium hydroxide in 20 ml of water was added to a solution of 1.2 g (2.6 mmol) of (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(4-ethoxycarbonylphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 169) in 20 ml of THF. After stirring for 4 hours at ambient temperature the mixture was diluted with 200 ml of water and extracted once with 100 ml of tert.butylmethylether. The aqueous phase was acidified with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted five times with a mixture of dichloromethane and methanol (9/1 v/v). The combined organic extracts were dried over sodium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation in vacuo. The residue remaining was triturated with diethylether and suction filtered. After drying in a circulating air dryer 0.5 g (44 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained. R_f 0.72 (EE/MeOH/AcOH 80/20/5 v/v/v) or 0.43 (El D).

IR (KBr): 1689 (C=O)

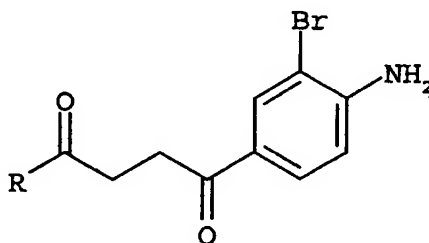
MS : no M^+

The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]
114	N43	B1	C1	saponification of the methyl ester Item no. 113 with LiOH/NaOH 1/20 in water/MeOH 1/1 (v/v)	58	D	0.13	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 593/595/597 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 615/617/619 (Br ₂)	1693.4 (C=O)
119	N46	B2	C1	saponification of the methyl ester Item no. 118 with NaOH in water/MeOH 3/1 (v/v)	76	A	0.08	M ⁺ = 606/608/610 (Br ₂)	3417.7, 3328.9 (NH, NH ₂); 1664.5, 1649.0 (C=O)

Example 6

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3-bromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 22)

A mixture of 1.5 g (2.84 mmol) of 3-{1-[4-(4-acetylamino-3-bromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone and 150 ml of conc. hydrochloric acid was refluxed for 1 hour. The residue was digested with water, the solid precipitated was suction filtered, recrystallised from acetonitrile and dried in vacuo. Yield: 0.88 g (64 % of theoretical). R_f 0.34 (El A).

IR (KBr): 3471.7, 3342.4 (NH, NH₂); 1666.4 (C=O)

MS : M⁺ = 484/486 (Br)

The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	Ex. no.	Remarks	% yield	El	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
20	N1	B2	C3	6	prepared from Item no. (19)	62	A	0.34	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 471/473 (Br); (M+Na) ⁺ = 493/495 (Br)		
23	N16	B2	C3	6	prepared from Item no. (17)	81	A	0.35	M ⁺ = 498/500 (Br)	1663 (C=O)	
24	N12	B2	C3	6	prepared from Item no. (21)	60	B	0.77	M ⁺ = 496/498 (Br)	1679.9 (C=O)	267 (MeOH)

Example 7

1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-N-[(2-aminocarbonylaminophenyl)methyl]-4-piperidineamine (Item no. 134)

2 ml of trifluoroacetic acid were added to a mixture of 0.20 g (0.2935 mmol) of 1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-N-dimethylethoxycarbonyl-N-[(2-aminocarbonylaminophenyl)methyl]-4-piperidineamine (Item no. 132) in 20 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours at ambient temperature and then evaporated down in vacuo. The residue remaining was triturated with ether and the beige-coloured amorphous solid obtained (0.15 g; 74 % of theoretical) was suction filtered.

IR (KBr): 1678.0 (C=O) cm⁻¹

R_f: 0.20 (El B)

ESI-MS: (M+H)⁺ = 580/582/584 (Br₂)

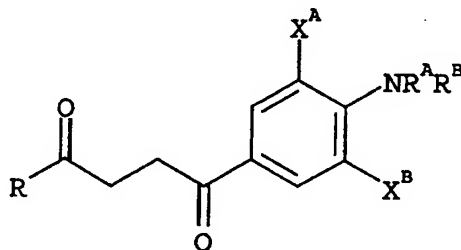
- 133 -

The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]
135	N55	B2	C1	prepared from Item no. (188)	55	A	0.32	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 615/617/619 (Br ₂)	1674.1 (C=O)
148	N57	B2	C1	prepared from Item no. (189)	66	D	0.76	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 731/733/735 (Br ₂); (M+2H) ⁺⁺ = 366/367/368 (Br ₂)	1676.0 (C=O)
182	N72	B2	C1	prepared from Item no. (181)	100	D	0.33	M ⁺ = 561/563/565 (Br ₂)	3448 (NH, NH ₂); 1674, 1646 (C=O)

Example 8

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



3-{1-[4-[3-chloro-4-[4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl]-phenyl]-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 106)

A mixture of 921 mg (2.00 mmol) of 3-{1-[4-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone, 377 mg (2.2 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-piperazine, 10 ml of DMSO and 0.276 g (2.00 mmol) of potassium carbonate was stirred for 24 hours at a reaction temperature of 85°C. The mixture was diluted with 200 ml of water, then extracted exhaustively with EE. The combined extracts were dried over sodium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation *in vacuo*. The residue remaining was purified twice by column chromatography on silica gel (Amicon, 35-70 μm) (dichloromethane/methanol/conc. ammonia 70/30/1 v/v/v as eluant). The appropriate eluates were combined and after

- 134 -

working up in the usual way yielded 30.0 mg (2.5 % of theoretical) of the desired substance as a colourless, amorphous substance. R_f 0.68 (El D) or 0.35 (eluant: dichloromethane/methanol/conc. ammonia 50/50/1 v/v/v).

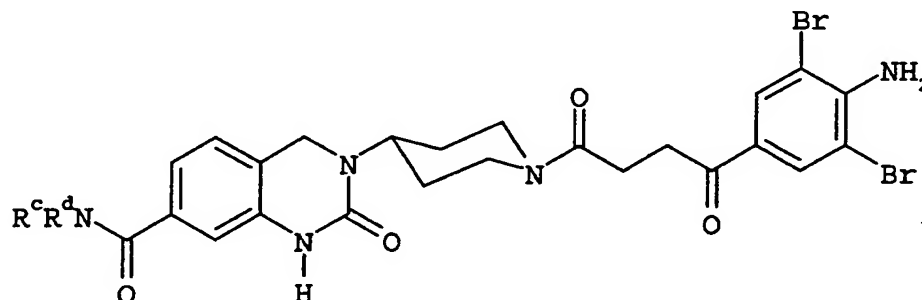
MS : $M^+ = 594/596$ (Cl); ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 595/597$ (Cl)

The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R_f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]
107	N10	B2	C36	exchange of F in the p position for acyl	13	C	0.26	ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 636/638$ (Br)	1668 (C=O)
108	N10	B2	C37	exchange of F in the p position for acyl	15	D	0.72	ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 651/653$ (Br)	1668 (C=O)
109	N10	B2	C38	exchange of F in the p position for acyl	27	D	0.65	ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 639/641$ (Br)	1668 (C=O)
111	N10	B2	C39	exchange of F in the p position for acyl	1.4	C	0.18	$M^+ = 728/730/732$ (Br ₂); ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 729/731/733$ (Br ₂)	
112	N10	B2	C40	exchange of F in the p position for acyl	3.0	D	0.78	ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 800/802/804$ (Br ₂)	

Example 9

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-7-carboxamide
(Item no. 121)

- 135 -

Prepared analogously to Example 2 from 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazoline-7-carboxylic acid (Item no. 119), ammonium carbonate and TBTU in the presence of THF/DMF (5/1 v/v) and triethylamine in a quantitative yield.

IR (KBr): 3415.7 (NH, NH₂); 1652.9 (C=O)

MS : M⁺ = 605/607/609 (Br₂)

The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]
122	N49	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	88	D	53	M ⁺ = 688/690/692 (Br ₂)	1633.6 (C=O)
123	N50	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	85	A	0.15	M ⁺ = 675/677/679 (Br ₂)	1672.2, 1635.5 (C=O)
124	N51	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	82	B	0.50	M ⁺ = 649/651/653 (Br ₂)	1662.5 (C=O)

Example 10

5-acetylamino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone (Item no. 6) and 3-acetyl-5-acetylamino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone (Item no. 7)

73.5 mg (0.72 mmol) of acetic anhydride were added to a solution of 200 mg (0.363 mmol) of 5-amino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone in 20 ml of THF at a reaction temperature of 0°C and then stirred for 2 hours at ambient temperature, followed by 1 hour at an internal temperature of 50°C. The mixture was evaporated down in vacuo, the residue was resolved by column chromatography on silica gel (30-60 μm) using dichloromethane/methanol/cyclohexane/conc. ammonia

- 136 -

400/40/40/2.5 v/v/v/v as eluant. By working up the appropriate fractions, 39 mg (17 % of theoretical) of 3-acetyl-5-acetylamino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone (Item no. 7), colourless crystals (diisopropylether); R_f 0.26 (El A); IR (KBr): 1732.0, 1675.0 (C=O); MS: $M^+ = 633/635/637$ (Br_2), and 22 mg (10 % of theoretical) of 5-acetylamino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone (Item no. 6), colourless crystals (diisopropylether), R_f 0.29 (El B); IR (KBr): 1695.3 (C=O); MS: $M^+ = 591/593/595$ (Br_2), were obtained.

Example 11

1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-5-cyclohexanecarbonylamino-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone (Item no. 8)

58.64 mg (0.40 mmol) of cyclohexanecarboxylic acid chloride were added to a solution of 200 mg (0.363 mmol) of 5-amino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone and 0.056 ml (0.40 mmol) of triethylamine in 10 ml of THF at a reaction temperature of 0°C and the suspension formed was then stirred for 2 hours at ambient temperature. The mixture was evaporated down in vacuo, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (30-60 μ m) using dichloromethane/methanol/cyclohexane/conc. ammonia 400/40/40/2.5 v/v/v/v as eluant. By working up the appropriate fractions 106 mg (44 % of theoretical) of the desired compound were obtained in the form of colourless crystals (diisopropylether), R_f 0.67 (El B).

IR (KBr): 1695.3 (C=O)

MS: $(M-H_2O)^+ = 641/643/645$ (Br_2)

- 137 -

Example 12

5-aminocarbonylamino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone
(Item no. 9)

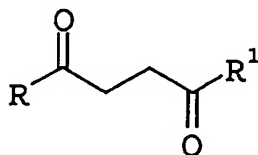
1.5 ml of 1N hydrochloric acid, followed by 47 mg (0.723 mmol) of sodium cyanate were added to a solution of 200 mg (0.363 mmol) of 5-amino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone in 5 ml of THF at a reaction temperature of 0°C. The ice bath was removed and the mixture was stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The orange-coloured solution was carefully combined with 100 ml of conc. aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and overlaid with 50 ml of tert.butylmethyl ether. The precipitate formed was suction filtered and purified by column chromatography on silica gel (30-60 μ m) using dichloromethane/methanol/cyclohexane/conc. ammonia 400/40/40/2.5 v/v/v/v as eluant. By working up the appropriate fractions 106 mg (44 % of theoretical) of the desired compound were obtained in the form of colourless crystals (THF/diethylether 1/1 v/v), R_f 0.12 (El B).

IR (KBr): 3435.0, 3354.0 (NH, NH₂); 1701.1, 1662.5 (C=O)

MS: ESI: (M+H)⁺ = 593/595/597 (Br₂); (M+Na)⁺ = 615/617/619 (Br₂)

Example 13

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



3-{1-[4-(3-chloro-4-dimethylaminophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 105)

- 138 -

A solution of 1.05 g (2.248 mmol) of (E)-3-{1-[4-(3-chloro-4-dimethylaminophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 104) in 110 ml of an ethanol-THF mixture (10/1 v/v) was hydrogenated at ambient temperature in the presence of 0.5 g of platinum on active charcoal until the uptake of hydrogen had ended. The mixture was freed from catalyst and solvent and purified by chromatography on silica gel using dichloromethane/methanol/conc. ammonia (95/5/0.3 v/v/v) as eluant. 0.36 g (34 % of theoretical) of a colourless substance were obtained, R_f 0.31 (El A).

IR (KBr): 1672, 1660 (C=O)

MS : M^+ = 468/470 (Cl)

The following was prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R_f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]
73	N10	B2	C28	Raney Ni as catalyst; MeOH as solvent	45	A	0.30	M^+ = 416	2229.6 (CN); 1664.5 (C=O)

Example 14

3-{1-[4-(4-aminomethylphenyl)-1-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 77)

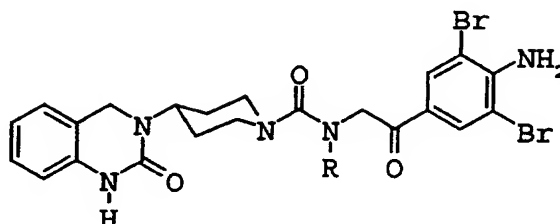
A solution of 0.48 g (1.153 mmol) of 3-{1-[4-(4-cyanophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 73) and 1.15 ml of 1N hydrochloric acid in 100 ml of methanol was hydrogenated at ambient temperature under 3 bar of pressure in the presence of 0.25 g of 10% palladium on active charcoal until the uptake of hydrogen had ended. The mixture was freed from catalyst and solvent and yielded 0.27 g (58 % of theoretical) of a colourless substance, R_f 0.30 (El A).

- 139 -

IR (KBr): 1662.5 (C=O)

MS : $M^+ = 406$; ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 407$ Example 15

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



N-[2-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-2-oxoethyl]-N-methyl-4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-piperidine-1-carboxamide
(Item no. 110)

A mixture of 693.9 mg (3.0 mmol) of 3-(4-piperidinyl)-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone, 1.2 ml of DIEA and 50 ml of dichloromethane was added dropwise to a solution of 326.4 mg (1.1 mmol) of triphosgene in 50 ml of dichloromethane within 30 minutes. Then a mixture of 1075.4 mg (3.0 mmol) of 1-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-2-methylaminoethanone-hydrochloride, 2.4 ml DIEA and 50 ml dichloromethane was added all at once and stirred for 2 hours at ambient temperature. The mixture was washed with 50 ml of dilute aqueous citric acid solution, dried over sodium sulphate, then freed from solvent. The residue remaining was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (Amicon, 35-70 μ m) using EE/MeOH/conc. ammonia 95/5/0.5 v/v/v as eluant. The crystalline product was stirred with EtOH, suction filtered and, after washing with diethyl-ether, dried in a circulating air dryer. Yield: 0.1 g (6 % of theoretical). M.p. 268-270°C. R_f 0.48 (El A).

IR (KBr): 3442 (NH, NH₂), 1664 (C=O)MS : $M^+ = 577/579/581$ (Br₂);ESI: $(M-H)^- = 576/578/580$ (Br₂); $(M+Na)^+ = 600/602/604$ (Br₂)

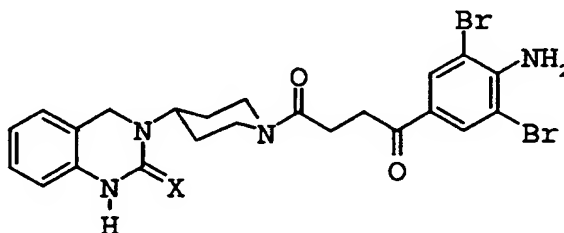
- 140 -

The following was prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]
126	N10	B11	C1	CDT (instead of triphosgene) / DIEA / THF	43	A	0.50	ESI: (M-H) ⁺ = 562/564/566 (Br ₂)	3450.4, 3323.2 (NH, NH ₂); 1662.5 (C=O)

Example 16

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinethione (Item no. 183)

A mixture of 0.5 g (0.929 mmol) of 1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-N-[(2-aminophenyl)methyl]-4-piperidineamine, 0.2 g (1.122 mmol) of N,N'-thiocarbonyldiimidazole and 50 ml of DMF was stirred for 1.5 hours at a temperature of 100°C. After cooling the mixture was stirred into 300 ml of water, the precipitate formed was suction filtered, washed thoroughly with 5 ml of methanol and diethyl ether and dried *in vacuo*. 480 mg (89 % of theoretical) of the desired substance were obtained in the form of colourless crystals, R_f 0.97 (El A).

IR (KBr): 1669 (C=O)

MS : M⁺ = 578/580/582 (Br₂)

- 141 -

The following was prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
184	N73	B2	C1	cyanoimino-diphenylcarbonate instead of N,N'-thiocarbonyl-diimidazole / DMF / 100°C	91	A	0.91	M ⁺ = 586/588/590 (Br ₂)	2187 (CN)	colourless crystals

The Examples which follow illustrate the preparation of some pharmaceutical formulations which contain any desired compound of general formula I as active ingredient:

Example I

Capsules for powder inhalation containing 1 mg of active ingredient

Composition:

1 capsule for powder inhalation contains:

active ingredient	1.0 mg
lactose	20.0 mg
hard gelatine capsules	<u>50.0 mg</u>
	71.0 mg

Method of preparation:

The active ingredient is ground to the particle size required for inhaled substances. The ground active ingredient is homogeneously mixed with the lactose. The mixture is transferred into hard gelatine capsules.

- 142 -

Example IIInhalable solution for Respimat[®] containing 1 mg of active ingredient

Composition:

1 puff contains:

active ingredient	1.0	mg
benzalkonium chloride	0.002	mg
disodium edetate	0.0075	mg
purified water ad	15.0	µl

Method of preparation:

The active ingredient and benzalkonium chloride are dissolved in water and transferred into Respimat[®] cartridges.

Example IIIInhalable solution for nebulisers containing 1 mg of active ingredient

Composition:

1 vial contains:

active ingredient	0.1	g
sodium chloride	0.18	g
benzalkonium chloride	0.002	g
purified water ad	20.0	ml

- 143 -

Method of preparation:

The active ingredient, sodium chloride and benzalkonium chloride are dissolved in water.

Example IVPropellant gas-operated metering aerosol containing 1 mg of active ingredient

Composition:

1 puff contains:

active ingredient	1.0 mg
lecithin	0.1 %
propellant gas ad	50.0 µl

Method of preparation:

The micronised active ingredient is homogeneously suspended in the mixture of lecithin and propellant gas. The suspension is transferred into a pressurised container with a metering valve.

Example VNasal spray containing 1 mg of active ingredient

Composition:

active ingredient	1.0 mg
sodium chloride	0.9 mg
benzalkonium chloride	0.025 mg
disodium edetate	0.05 mg
purified water ad	0.1 ml

- 144 -

Method of preparation:

The active ingredient and the excipients are dissolved in water and transferred into a suitable container.

Example VIInjectable solution containing 5 mg of active substance per
5 mlComposition:

active substance	5 mg
glucose	250 mg
human serum albumin	10 mg
glycofurol	250 mg
water for injections ad	5 ml

Preparation:

Glycofurol and glucose are dissolved in water for injections (WfI); human serum albumin is added; active ingredient is dissolved with heating; made up to specified volume with WfI; transferred into ampoules under nitrogen gas.

Example VIIInjectable solution containing 100 mg of active substance per
20 mlComposition:

active substance	100 mg
monopotassium dihydrogen phosphate	
= KH_2PO_4	12 mg
disodium hydrogen phosphate	
= $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$	2 mg

- 145 -

sodium chloride	180 mg
human serum albumin	50 mg
Polysorbate 80	20 mg
water for injections ad	20 ml

Preparation:

Polysorbate 80, sodium chloride, monopotassium dihydrogen phosphate and disodium hydrogen phosphate are dissolved in water for injections (WfI); human serum albumin is added; active ingredient is dissolved with heating; made up to specified volume with WfI; transferred into ampoules.

Example VIIILyophilisate containing 10 mg of active substanceComposition:

Active substance	10 mg
Mannitol	300 mg
human serum albumin	20 mg

Preparation:

Mannitol is dissolved in water for injections (WfI); human serum albumin is added; active ingredient is dissolved with heating; made up to specified volume with WfI; transferred into vials; freeze-dried.

Solvent for lyophilisate:

Polysorbate 80 = Tween 80	20 mg
mannitol	200 mg
water for injections ad	10 ml

- 146 -

Preparation:

Polysorbate 80 and mannitol are dissolved in water for injections (WfI); transferred into ampoules.

Example IXTablets containing 20 mg of active substanceComposition:

active substance	20 mg
lactose	120 mg
maize starch	40 mg
magnesium stearate	2 mg
Povidone K 25	18 mg

Preparation:

Active substance, lactose and maize starch are homogeneously mixed; granulated with an aqueous solution of Povidone; mixed with magnesium stearate; compressed in a tablet press; weight of tablet 200 mg.

Example XCapsules containing 20 mg active substanceComposition:

active substance	20 mg
maize starch	80 mg
highly dispersed silica	5 mg
magnesium stearate	2.5 mg

Preparation:

Active substance, maize starch and silica are homogeneously mixed; mixed with magnesium stearate; the mixture is packed

- 147 -

into size 3 hard gelatine capsules in a capsule filling machine.

Example XI

Suppositories containing 50 mg of active substance

Composition:

active substance	50 mg
hard fat (Adeps solidus) q.s. ad	1700 mg

Preparation:

Hard fat is melted at about 38°C; ground active substance is homogeneously dispersed in the molten hard fat; after cooling to about 35°C it is poured into chilled moulds.

Example XII

Injectable solution containing 10 mg of active substance per 1 ml

Composition:

active substance	10 mg
mannitol	50 mg
human serum albumin	10 mg
water for injections ad	1 ml

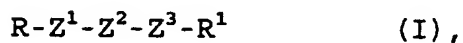
- 148 -

Preparation:

Mannitol is dissolved in water for injections (WfI); human serum albumin is added; active ingredient is dissolved with heating; made up to specified volume with WfI; transferred into ampoules under nitrogen gas.

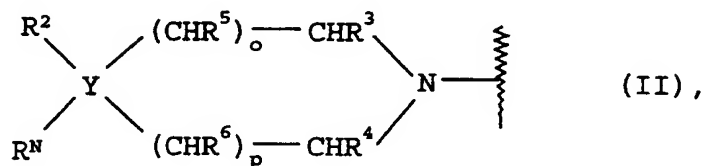
Patent Claims

1. Arylalkanes, arylalkenes and aryl-azaalkanes of general formula



wherein

R denotes the H₂N group or the group of formula



wherein

o denotes the number 1 or, if Y does not denote a nitrogen atom, also denotes the number 0,

p denotes the number 1 or, if Y does not denote a nitrogen atom, also denotes the number 0,

Y denotes the carbon atom or, if Y is not linked to a heteroatom, may also denote the nitrogen atom,

R² denotes a pair of free electrons, if Y denotes the nitrogen atom, or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, it denotes the hydrogen atom or an alkyl group with 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

- 150 -

R³ and R⁴ denote hydrogen atoms or together denote an alkylene bridge with 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

R⁵ and R⁶ denote hydrogen atoms or together denote a one- to three-membered unbranched alkylene bridge wherein a methylene group may be replaced by a methylimino group,

R^N denotes a saturated, mono- or diunsaturated 5- to 7-membered aza, diaza, triaza, oxaza, thiaza, thiadiazia or S,S-dioxido-thiadiazia heterocycle,

wherein the abovementioned heterocycles may be linked via a carbon or nitrogen atom and

may contain, adjacent to a nitrogen atom, a carbonyl, thioxo or iminocarbonyl group or two carbonyl groups or a carbonyl group and a thioxo or iminocarbonyl group, wherein the abovementioned iminocarbonyl groups may be substituted by a cyano group or by an alkoxycarbonyl group with 1 to 4 carbon atoms in the alkyl moiety,

may be substituted at one of the nitrogen atoms by an alkanoyl, hydroxycarbonylalkyl or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group,

may be substituted at one or two carbon atoms by a branched or unbranched alkyl group, by a phenyl, phenylmethyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, pyridinyl, diazinyl, furyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, 1,3-oxazolyl, 1,3-thiazolyl, isoxazolyl, pyrazolyl, 1-methylpyrazolyl, imidazolyl or 1-methylimidazolyl group, wherein the substituents may be identical or different,

- 151 -

wherein additionally an unbranched alkylene group with 3 to 6 carbon atoms may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or the group =CH-S-CH= may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered saturated heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or

an olefinic double bond of one of the abovementioned unsaturated heterocycles may be fused to a benzene, pyridine, diazine, 1,3-oxazole, thiophene, furan, thiazole, pyrrole, N-methyl-pyrrole, quinoline, imidazole or N-methyl-imidazole ring,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, R^N denotes the hydroxy group, a benzoylaminocarbonylamino group, a phenylamino group optionally substituted at the aniline nitrogen by an aminocarbonyl group or a phenylmethylamino group optionally substituted at the benzylamine nitrogen by an alkoxycarbonyl group,

wherein the phenyl, pyridinyl, diazinyl, furyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, 1,3-oxazolyl, 1,3-thiazolyl, isoxazolyl, pyrazolyl, 1-methylpyrazolyl, imidazolyl or 1-methylimidazolyl groups contained in the groups mentioned under R^N as well as benzo-, thieno-, pyrido-, diazino- and quinolino-fused heterocycles in the carbon skeleton may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted by fluorine, chlorine or bromine atoms, by alkyl groups, by cycloalkyl groups with 3 to 8 carbon atoms, nitro, alkoxy, alkylthio, alkylsulphinyl, alkylsulphonyl, alkylsulphonylamino, phenyl, phenylalkoxy, trifluoromethyl, alkoxycarbonyl, alkoxycarbonylalkyl, carboxy, carboxyalkyl,

- 152 -

dialkylaminoalkyl, hydroxy, amino, acetylamino, propionylamino, cycloalkanecarbonylamino, benzoyl, benzoylamino, benzoylmethylamino, aminocarbonyl, alkylaminocarbonyl, dialkylaminocarbonyl, hydroxyalkylaminocarbonyl, (4-morpholinyl)carbonyl, (1-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl, (1-piperidinyl)carbonyl, (hexahydro-1-azepinyl)carbonyl, (4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)piperidinyl]carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)piperidinyl]carbonylamino, methylenedioxy, aminocarbonylamino, aminocarbonylaminoalkyl, alkylaminocarbonylamino, dialkylaminocarbonylamino, aminomethyl, alkanoyl, cyano, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoromethylthio, trifluoromethylsulphinyl or trifluoromethylsulphonyl groups, wherein the substituents may be identical or different and the abovementioned benzoyl, benzoylamino, benzoylaminoaminocarbonylamino and benzoylmethylamino groups may in turn additionally be substituted in the phenyl moiety by a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom, an alkyl, trifluoromethyl, amino or acetylamino group,

and the alkyl groups contained in the abovementioned groups, unless otherwise stated, may contain 1 to 5 carbon atoms,

or, if $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ denotes the divalent group $\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}$, R may also denote the 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-1'-yl group,

Z^1 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_3-$,

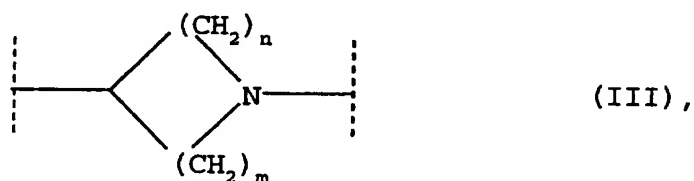
- 153 -

wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C₁₋₃-alkyl or a hydroxy group,

one of the groups -NH-CH₂, -CH₂-NH, -NH-(CH₂)₂- or -(CH₂)₂-NH-,

wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C₁₋₃-alkyl group and the nitrogen atoms are each linked to a carbonyl group of the groups Z¹ or Z³,

the group -CH=CH- or a divalent group of general formula



wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2, 3 or 4 and

the nitrogen atom is linked to a carbonyl group of the group Z³,

Z³ denotes the methylene or carbonyl group,

wherein at least one of the groups Z¹ and Z³ denotes a carbonyl group, and

R¹ denotes a phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, benzimidazolyl, 1,3-dihydro-2-oxobenzimidazolyl, octahydro-9-phenanthryl or benzodioxolanyl group,

- 154 -

wherein the abovementioned aromatic and heteroaromatic groups in the carbon skeleton may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted by fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atoms, by alkyl groups, by cycloalkyl groups with 3 to 8 carbon atoms, phenylalkyl groups, hydroxy, alkoxy, phenyl, phenylalkoxy, trifluoromethyl, alkoxycarbonylalkyl, carboxyalkyl, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxy, dialkylaminoalkyl, amino, aminoalkyl, alkylamino, dialkylamino, acetylamino, propionylamino, benzoyl, benzoylamino, benzoylmethylamino, 4-(dialkylaminoalkyl)-1-piperazinyl, piperidinyl, 4-(1-piperidinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(4-dialkylaminoalkyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl, nitro, methanesulphonyloxy, aminocarbonyl, alkylaminocarbonyl, dialkylaminocarbonyl, alkanoyl, cyano, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoromethylthio, trifluoromethylsulphinyl or trifluoromethylsulphonyl groups and the substituents may be identical or different and the abovementioned benzoyl, benzoylamino and benzoylmethylamino groups may in turn additionally be substituted in the phenyl moiety by a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom or by an alkyl, trifluoromethyl, amino or acetylamino group,

wherein the hydroxy, amino and imidazolyl groups contained in the abovementioned groups may be substituted with protecting groups well known from peptide chemistry, preferably with the acetyl, benzyloxycarbonyl or tert.butyloxycarbonyl group,

all the abovementioned alkyl and alkoxy groups and the alkyl or alkylene moieties present inside the other groups specified may contain 1 to 7 carbon atoms, unless otherwise stated, and

the tautomers, the diastereomers, the enantiomers and the salts thereof.

R denotes the H₂N group, if Z¹ and Z³ each denote the CO group and R¹ is at least disubstituted by the H₂N group and an additional substituent or if Z² does not contain an imino group,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R}^2 \quad \quad (\text{CHR}^5) \text{---} \text{CHR}^3 \\ \quad \diagdown \quad \diagup \quad \quad \quad \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \quad \text{Y} \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{N} \text{---} \text{---} \\ \quad \diagup \quad \diagdown \quad \quad \quad \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{R}^N \quad \quad (\text{CHR}^6) \text{---} \text{CHR}^4 \end{array} \quad \text{(II)},$$

o, p, R⁵, R⁶ and Y are as hereinbefore defined,

R³ and R⁴ denote hydrogen atoms or together denote an alkylene bridge with 2 to 3 carbon atoms,

- 156 -

R^N denotes a monocyclic saturated, mono- or diunsaturated 5- to 7-membered aza, diaza, triaza, oxaza, thiaza, thiadiaz- or S,S-dioxido-thiadiaz heterocycle containing one to two imino groups,

wherein the abovementioned heterocycles are linked via a carbon or nitrogen atom and

adjacent to a nitrogen atom contain a carbonyl, thioxo or iminocarbonyl group or two carbonyl groups or a carbonyl group and a thioxo or iminocarbonyl group, wherein the abovementioned iminocarbonyl groups may be substituted by a cyano group or by an alkoxycarbonyl group with 1 to 4 carbon atoms in the alkyl moiety,

the abovementioned heterocycles containing two imino groups may be substituted at one of the imino-nitrogen atoms by an alkanoyl, hydroxycarbonylalkyl or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group with 1 to 3 carbon atoms in the alkyl moieties,

may be substituted at one or two carbon atoms by an unbranched alkyl group, by a phenyl, phenylmethyl, naphthyl, biphenyl or thienyl group, wherein the substituents may be identical or different,

and wherein additionally an unbranched alkylene group with 3 to 4 carbon atoms may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or the group =CH-S-CH= may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered saturated heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or

- 157 -

an olefinic double bond of one of the abovementioned unsaturated heterocycles may be fused to a benzene, pyridine, diazine, thiophene or quinoline ring,

with the provisos that

(i) R^N does not take on the meaning of the 2,6-dioxo-3-phenyl-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-1H-pyrimidin-3-yl group, the 2-oxo-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-imidazolyl group optionally monosubstituted by an acyl group in the 3 position and the 2(1H)-oxo-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-1-pyrimidinyl group and

(ii) R^1 does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-chlorophenyl or 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-bromophenyl group if R^N takes on the meaning of the 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxobenzimidazol-1-yl, 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-thioxobenzimidazol-1-yl, 2(1H)-oxoquinoxalin-1-yl, 3-oxo-2,3-dihydrobenzoxazin-4-yl, 3-oxo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydrobenz[f][1,4]oxazepin-4-yl or 2(1H)-oxoquinolin-3-yl group,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, with the proviso that

(i) R^1 does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl or naphthyl group or

(ii) Z^2 does not denote a group containing N or

(iii) Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group,

R^N may also represent the hydroxy group

- 158 -

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom and Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group, a benzoylamino-carbonylamino group, a phenylamino group optionally at least monosubstituted at the aniline nitrogen by an aminocarbonyl group and in the phenyl moiety,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group and in the group of general formula (II) o and p each assume the value 1, a phenylmethyldamino group optionally at least monosubstituted at the benzylamine nitrogen by a C₁₋₄-alkoxy-carbonyl group and in the phenyl moiety,

wherein the phenyl and thienyl groups contained in the groups mentioned under R^N as well as benzo-, thieno-, pyrido-, diazino- and quinolino-fused heterocycles may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by fluorine, chlorine or bromine atoms, by methyl groups, by cycloalkyl groups with 5 to 6 carbon atoms, nitro, methoxy, methylthio, methylsulphanyl, methylsulphonyl, methanesulphonylamino, phenyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxycarbonyl, carboxy, hydroxy, amino, acetylamino, cyclohexanecarbonylamino, aminocarbonyl, hydroxyethylaminocarbonyl, (4-morpholinyl)carbonyl, (1-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl, (1-piperidinyl)carbonyl, (hexahydro-1-azepinyl)carbonyl, (4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)-piperidinyl]carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)piperidinyl]-carbonylamino, aminocarbonylamino, alkylaminocarbonylamino, dialkylaminocarbonylamino, aminomethyl, acetyl, cyano or trifluoromethoxy groups, wherein the substituents may be identical or different,

- 159 -

or, if $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ denotes the divalent group $\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}$, R may also denote the 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidiny-1'-yl group,

Z^1 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_3-$,

wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or a hydroxy group,

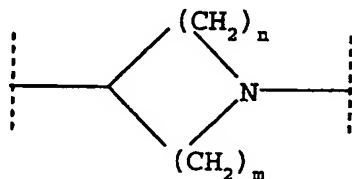
one of the groups

$-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}$, $-\text{NH}-(\text{CH}_2)_2-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-\text{NH}-$,

wherein the nitrogen atoms are each linked to a carbonyl group of the groups Z^1 or Z^3 and

the hydrogen atom of the imino group may in each case be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group,

the group $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ or, if R^1 does not denote an aromatic or heteroaromatic group substituted by cycloalkyl or phenyl groups or R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on benzene ring, it also denotes a divalent group of general formula



(III),

wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2 or 3 and

- 160 -

the nitrogen atom is linked to the group Z^3 with the meaning of a carbonyl group,

Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group or, if R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on aromatic or heteroaromatic ring, it also denotes the methylene group,

wherein at least one of the groups Z^1 and Z^3 denotes a carbonyl group and the sequence $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ is at least four-membered, and

R^1 denotes a mono-, di- or trisubstituted phenyl group, a benzimidazolyl, 1,3-dihydro-2-oxobenzimidazolyl, octahydro-9-phenanthryl or benzodioxolanyl group or, if Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group, R^1 may also denote a 1-naphthyl or 2-naphthyl group,

wherein the abovementioned aromatic and heteroaromatic groups may be mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atoms, by alkyl groups with 1 to 4 carbon atoms, by cycloalkyl groups with 5 to 6 carbon atoms, hydroxy, alkoxy, phenyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, carboxy, amino, aminomethyl, methylamino, dimethylamino, acetylamino, 4-[3-(dimethylaminopropyl)]-1-piperazinyl, piperidinyl, 4-(1-piperidinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-[4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl]-1-piperidinyl, nitro, methanesulphonyloxy, aminocarbonyl, acetyl, cyano or trifluoromethoxy groups and the substituents may be identical or different,

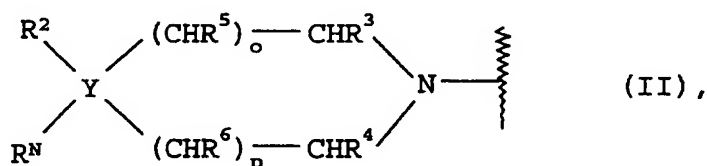
- 161 -

wherein all the abovementioned alkyl and alkoxy groups and the alkyl or alkylene moieties present inside the other groups specified may contain 1 to 5 carbon atoms unless otherwise stated,

the tautomers, diastereomers, enantiomers and salts thereof.

3. Compounds of the above general formula I according to claim 1, wherein

R denotes the H₂N group, if Z¹ and Z³ each denote the CO group and R¹ is at least disubstituted by the H₂N group and an additional substituent or if Z² does not contain an imino group, or the group of formula



wherein

o, p and Y are as hereinbefore defined,

R² denotes a pair of free electrons, if Y denotes the nitrogen atom, or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, R² denotes the hydrogen atom or a methyl group,

R³ and R⁴ denote hydrogen atoms or together denote an alkylene bridge with 2 carbon atoms,

R⁵ and R⁶ denote hydrogen atoms or together denote an n-propylene bridge wherein the central methylene group may be replaced by a methylimino group,

- 162 -

R^N denotes a monocyclic saturated, mono- or diunsaturated 5- to 7-membered aza, diaza, triaza, thiadiazia or S,S-dioxido-thiadiazia heterocycle containing one to two imino groups,

wherein the abovementioned heterocycles are linked via a carbon or nitrogen atom and

adjacent to a nitrogen atom contain a carbonyl, thioxo or iminocarbonyl group or two carbonyl groups or a carbonyl group and a thioxo or iminocarbonyl group, wherein the abovementioned iminocarbonyl groups may be substituted by a cyano group or by a tert.butoxycarbonyl group,

the abovementioned heterocycles containing two imino groups may be substituted at one of the imino-nitrogen atoms by an acetyl, carboxymethyl or methoxycarbonylmethyl group,

may be substituted at one or two carbon atoms by a methyl group, by a phenyl, phenylmethyl, naphthyl, biphenyl or thienyl group, wherein the substituents may be identical or different,

and wherein additionally an unbranched alkylene group with 4 carbon atoms may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or the group $=CH-S-CH=$ may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered saturated heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or

- 163 -

an olefinic double bond of one of the abovementioned unsaturated heterocycles may be fused to a benzene, pyridine, diazine, thiophene or quinoline ring,

with the provisos that

(i) R^N does not take on the meaning of the 2,6-dioxo-3-phenyl-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-1H-pyrimidin-3-yl group, the 2-oxo-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-imidazolyl group optionally monosubstituted in the 3 position by an acyl group and the 2(1H)-oxo-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-1-pyrimidinyl group, and

(ii) R^1 does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-chlorophenyl or 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-bromophenyl group, if R^N takes on the meaning of the 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxobenzimidazol-1-yl, 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-thioxobenzimidazol-1-yl, 2(1H)oxoquinoxalin-1-yl, 3-oxo-2,3-dihydrobenzoxazin-4-yl, 3-oxo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydrobenz[f][1,4]oxazepin-4-yl or 2(1H)-oxoquinolin-3-yl group,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, with the proviso that

(i) R^1 does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl or naphthyl group or

(ii) Z^2 does not denote a group containing N, or

(iii) Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group,

R^N may also denote the hydroxy group,

- 164 -

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom and Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group, a benzoylamino carbonylamino group, a phenylamino group optionally at least monosubstituted by an aminocarbonyl group at the aniline nitrogen and in the phenyl moiety,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group and in the group of general formula (II) o and p each assume the value 1, a phenylmethylamino group optionally at least monosubstituted by a tert. butoxycarbonyl group at the benzylamine nitrogen and in the phenyl moiety,

wherein the phenyl and thienyl groups contained in the groups mentioned under R^N as well as benzo-, thieno-, pyrido-, diazino- and quinolino-fused heterocycles may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by fluorine, chlorine or bromine atoms, by methyl, nitro, methoxy, methanesulphonylamino, phenyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxycarbonyl, carboxy, hydroxy, amino, acetylamino, cyclohexanecarbonylamino, aminocarbonyl, hydroxyethylaminocarbonyl, (4-morpholinyl)carbonyl, (4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)-1-piperidinyl]carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)piperidinyl]carbonylamino, aminomethyl or aminocarbonylamino groups, wherein the substituents may be identical or different,

or, if $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ denotes the divalent group $\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}$, R may also denote the 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-1'-yl group,

- 165 -

Z^1 denotes methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2-$ or $-(CH_2)_3-$,

wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or hydroxy group,

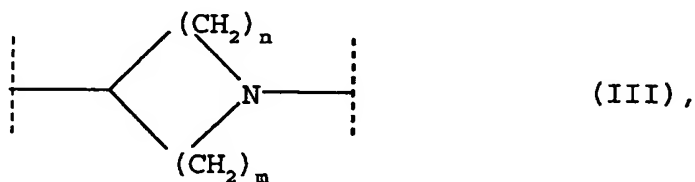
one of the groups

$-NH-CH_2$, $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH-$,

wherein the nitrogen atoms are each linked to a carbonyl group of the groups Z^1 or Z^3 and

the hydrogen atom of the imino group may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group in each case,

the group $-CH=CH-$ or, if R^1 does not denote an aromatic or heteroaromatic group substituted by cycloalkyl or phenyl groups or R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on benzene ring, it may also denote a divalent group of general formula



wherein

m denotes one of the numbers 1 or 2 and n denotes one of the numbers 1, 2 or 3 and the nitrogen atom is linked to the group Z^3 with the meaning of a carbonyl group,

- 166 -

Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group or, if R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on aromatic or heteroaromatic ring, it may also denote the methylene group,

wherein at least one of the groups Z^1 and Z^3 denotes a carbonyl group and the sequence $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ is at least four-membered, and

R^1 denotes a monosubstituted phenyl group, a 5-benzimidazolyl, 1,3-dihydro-2-oxobenzimidazol-5-yl, octahydro-9-phenanthryl or 5-benzodioxolanyl group or, if Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group, it may also denote a 1-naphthyl or 2-naphthyl group,

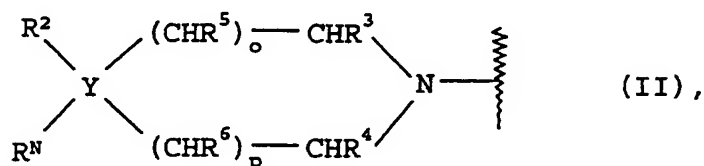
wherein the abovementioned aromatic and heteroaromatic groups may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atoms, by alkyl groups with 1 to 4 carbon atoms, by cyclohexyl, hydroxy, alkoxy groups with up to 3 carbon atoms in the alkyl moiety, phenyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, carboxy, amino, aminomethyl, methylamino, dimethylamino, acetylamino, 4-[3-(dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl, piperidinyl, 4-(1-piperidinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-[4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl, nitro, cyano or trifluoromethoxy groups and the substituents may be identical or different,

the tautomers, diastereomers, enantiomers and salts thereof.

4. Compounds of the above general formula I according to claim 1, wherein

- 167 -

R denotes the H₂N group, if Z¹ and Z³ each denote the CO group and R¹ is at least disubstituted by the H₂N group and an additional substituent or if Z² does not contain an imino group, or R denotes the group of formula



wherein

Y denotes the carbon atom and o and p independently of one another denotes the numbers 1 or 0 or

Y denotes the nitrogen atom and o and p each represent the number 1,

R² denotes a pair of free electrons, if Y denotes the nitrogen atom, or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, R² denotes the hydrogen atom or the methyl group,

R³ and R⁴ denote hydrogen atoms or together denote a ethylene bridge,

R⁵ and R⁶ denote hydrogen atoms or together denote a -CH₂-N(CH₃)-CH₂- bridge,

R^N denotes a 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-1-yl, 1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxopyrimido[2,3-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 4-phenyl-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 1,3-dihydro-5-methyl-4-phenyl-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxothieno[3,4-d]pyri-

midin-3-yl, 1,3-dihydro-4-(3-thienyl)-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 2,4-dihydro-5-phenyl-3(3H)-oxo-1,2,4-triazol-2-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxothieno[3,2-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxopyrido[3,4-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxopyrido[4,3-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinolin-3-yl, 2(1H)-oxoquinoxalin-3-yl, 1,1-dioxido-3(4H)-oxo-1,2,4-benzothiadiazin-2-yl, 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxoimidazo[4,5-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 3,4,4a,5,6,7,8,8a-octahydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl, 2,5-dioxo-4-(phenylmethyl)-imidazolidin-1-yl, 2,5-dioxo-4-phenyl-imidazolidin-1-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2,2-dioxido-2,1,3-benzothiadiazin-3-yl, 1,3-dihydro-4-(2-naphthyl)-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 4-(4-biphenyl)-1,3-dihydro-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxoimidazo[4,5-c]quinolin-3-yl, 2-(dimethylethoxycarbonylamino)-3,4-dihydroquinazolin-3-yl, 2-amino-3,4-dihydroquinazolin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-thioxoquinazolin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-cyanoiminoquinazolin-3-yl, 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2(1H)-oxo-1,3-benzodiazepin-3-yl or 2,4(1H,3H)-dioxoquinazolin-3-yl group or,

if R¹ does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-chlorophenyl or 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-bromophenyl group, may also denote a 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxobenzimidazol-1-yl or 2(1H)-oxoquinolin-3-yl group,

wherein the abovementioned mono- and bicyclic heterocycles containing two imino groups may be substituted at one of the imino-nitrogen atoms by an acetyl, carboxymethyl or methoxycarbonylmethyl group and/or

- 169 -

may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton and/or at the phenyl groups contained in these groups by fluorine, chlorine or bromine atoms, by methyl groups, nitro, methoxy, methanesulphonylamino, phenyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxycarbonyl, carboxy, hydroxy, amino, acetylamino, cyclohexanecarbonylamino, aminocarbonyl, hydroxyethylaminocarbonyl, (4-morpholinyl)carbonyl, (4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)-1-piperidinyl]carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)piperidinyl]-carbonylamino or aminocarbonylamino groups, wherein the substituents may be identical or different and multiple substitution with the last six substituents is ruled out,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, with the proviso that

(i) R^1 does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl or naphthyl group or

(ii) Z^2 does not denote an N-containing group,

R^N may also denote the hydroxy group,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom and Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group, a benzoylamino carbonylamino group, a phenylamino group optionally at least monosubstituted by an aminocarbonyl group at the aniline nitrogen and in the phenyl moiety

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group and in the group of general formula (II) o and p each assume the value 1, a phenylmethylamino group optionally at least monosubstituted by a tert.

- 170 -

butoxycarbonyl group at the benzylamine nitrogen and in the phenyl moiety,

or, if $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ denotes the divalent group $\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}$, R may also denote the 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidiny-1'-yl group,

Z^1 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_3-$,

wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a methyl or hydroxy group,

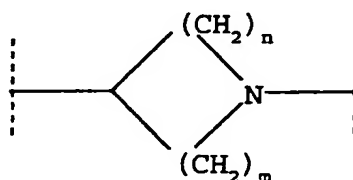
one of the groups . .

$-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-\text{NH}-$,

wherein the nitrogen atoms are each linked to a carbonyl group of the groups Z^1 or Z^3 and

the hydrogen atom of the imino group may be replaced in each case by the methyl group,

the group $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ or, if R^1 does not represent an aromatic or heteroaromatic group substituted by cycloalkyl or phenyl groups or R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on benzene ring, it also denotes a divalent group of general formula



(III),

wherein

- 171 -

m denotes one of the numbers 1 or 2 and n denotes one of the numbers 1, 2 or 3 and the nitrogen atom is linked to the group Z^3 with the meaning of a carbonyl group,

Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group or, if R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on aromatic or heteroaromatic ring, it also denotes the methylene group,

wherein at least one of the groups Z^1 and Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group and the sequence $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ is at least four-membered, and

R^1 is defined as in claim 3,

the tautomers, diastereomers, enantiomers and salts thereof.

5. Compounds of the above general formula I according to claims 1 to 4, characterised in that they are described in Examples 1 to 16.

6. The following compounds of general formula I:

1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone,

1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-(3-trifluoromethylphenyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone,

1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-(3-thienyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone,

- 172 -

3-[1'-(4-amino-3,5-dibromobenzoyl)-[1.4']]bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone,

(E)-3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone,

(E)-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone,

3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone,

methyl 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazoline-7-carboxylate,

3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazoline-7-carboxamide,

3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-7-carboxamide,

3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-imidazo[4.5-c]quinolinone and

3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinethione

and the salts thereof.

7. Physiologically acceptable salts of the compounds according to at least one of claims 1 to 6 with inorganic or organic acids or bases.

8. Pharmaceutical compositions containing a compound according to at least one of claims 1 to 6 or a physiologically

- 173 -

acceptable salt according to claim 7 optionally together with one or more inert carriers and/or diluents.

9. Use of a compound according to at least one of claims 1 to 7 for preparing a pharmaceutical composition which has CGRP-antagonistic properties.

10. Use of a compound according to at least one of claims 1 to 7 for preparing a pharmaceutical composition which is suitable for the acute and prophylactic treatment of headaches, for treating non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, cardiovascular diseases, skin diseases, inflammatory diseases, allergic rhinitis, asthma, diseases which are accompanied by excessive vasodilatation and consequent reductions in blood flow through the tissues, morphine tolerance or for controlling menopausal hot flushes.

11. Process for preparing a pharmaceutical composition according to claim 8, characterised in that a compound according to at least one of claims 1 to 7 is incorporated in one or more inert carriers and/or diluents by a non-chemical method.

12. Process for preparing the compounds of general formula I according to claims 1 to 7, characterised in that

a) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein Z^1 denotes the methylene group, Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2$, $-(CH_2)_3-$ or $-CH=CH-$ and Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group and

R has the meanings given in claims 1 to 6 with the exception of a 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidiny-1'-yl group,

- 174 -

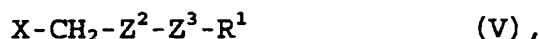
a compound of general formula



wherein

R' has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6 with the exception of a 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidiny-1'-yl group,

is reacted with a compound of general formula



wherein

R¹ is defined as in claims 1 to 6,

Z² denotes one of the groups -(CH₂)₂-, -(CH₂)₃- or -CH=CH-,

Z³ denotes the carbonyl group and

X denotes a leaving group, or

b) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein

Z¹ denotes the carbonyl group,

Z² denotes one of the groups -(CH₂)₂- or -(CH₂)₃-, wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C₁₋₃-alkyl or a hydroxy group,

one of the groups -CH₂-NH- or -(CH₂)₂-NH, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C₁₋₃-alkyl group, or the group -CH=CH- and

Z³ denotes the methylene or carbonyl group,

a carboxylic acid of general formula



- 175 -

wherein

R^1 is defined as in claims 1 to 6,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2-$ or $-(CH_2)_3$, wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or a hydroxy group,

one of the groups $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group, or the group $-CH=CH-$, and

Z^3 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group,

is coupled with a compound of general formula



wherein

R has the meanings given in claims 1 to 6, or

c) in order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein

Z^1 denotes the carbonyl group,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2-$ or $-(CH_2)_3$, wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or hydroxy group,

one of the groups $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group, or the group $-CH=CH-$ and

Z^3 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group,

a compound of general formula



wherein

R^1 is defined as in claims 1 to 6,

- 176 -

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2-$ or $-(CH_2)_3$, wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or a hydroxy group,

one of the groups $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group, or the group $-CH=CH-$,

Z^3 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group and

Nu denotes a leaving group,

is coupled with a compound of general formula



wherein

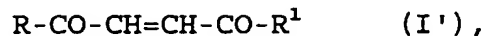
R is defined as in claims 1 to 6, or

d) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein

Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the carbonyl group and

Z^2 denotes the group $-(CH_2)_2-$:

a compound of general formula



wherein

R and R^1 are defined as in claims 1 to 6, is catalytically hydrogenated, or

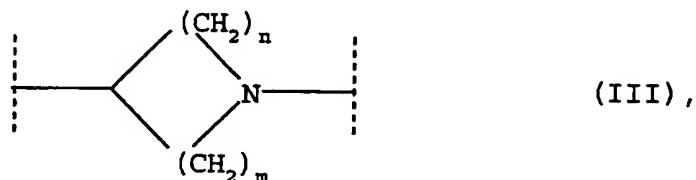
e) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein

Z^1 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom

- 177 -

of the imino group may each be replaced by a C₁₋₃-alkyl group, or a divalent group of general formula



wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2, 3 or 4 and

Z³ denotes the carbonyl group:

a carboxylic acid of general formula



wherein

R¹ is defined as in claims 1 to 6,

is coupled with a compound of general formula

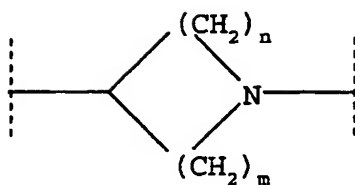


wherein

R is defined as in claims 1 to 6,

Z¹ denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z² denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond, Z² denotes one of the groups -CH₂-NH- or -(CH₂)₂-NH, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C₁₋₃-alkyl group, or a divalent group of general formula

- 178 -



(III),

wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers

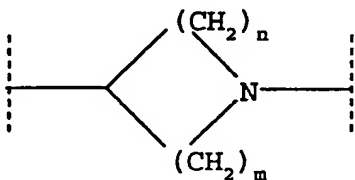
1, 2, 3 or 4 and

Z³ denotes the carbonyl group, or

f) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein

Z¹ denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z² denotes a divalent group of general formula III, Z¹ may also denote a bond,

Z² denotes one of the groups -CH₂-NH- or -(CH₂)₂-NH, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C₁₋₃-alkyl group, or Z¹ denotes a divalent group of general formula



(III),

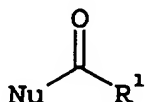
wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers

1, 2, 3 or 4 and

Z³ denotes the carbonyl group,

a compound of general formula



(X),

- 179 -

wherein

R^1 is defined as in claims 1 to 6 and

Nu denotes a leaving group,

is coupled with a compound of general formula

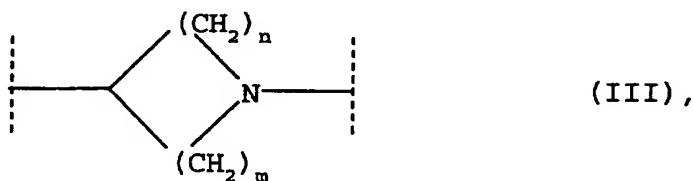


wherein

R is defined as in claims 1 to 6,

Z^1 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH$ wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group, or a divalent group of general formula



wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2, 3 or 4 and

Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group, or

g) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein R and R^1 are defined as in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that they must not carry any free amino groups,

Z^1 denotes the carbonyl group,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-NH-CH_2-$ or $-NH-(CH_2)_2$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group and

Z^3 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group,

- 180 -

an amine of general formula



wherein

R'' has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that the group does not contain a free amino group,

is reacted with a carbonic acid derivative of general formula



wherein

X^1 denotes a nucleofugic group

and with a compound of general formula



wherein

the group R^1 has the meanings given for R^1 in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that the group does not contain a free amino group,

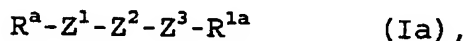
Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-NH-CH_2-$ or $-NH-(CH_2)_2-$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group and

Z^3 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group, or

- 181 -

h) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein at least one of the groups R and R¹ contains one or more carboxy groups:

a carboxylic acid ester of general formula



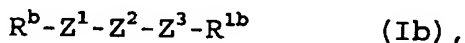
wherein

Z¹, Z² and Z³ are defined as in claims 1 to 6 and R^a and R^{1a} have the meanings given for R and R¹, respectively, in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that at least one of these groups contains one or more alkoxycarbonyl groups,

is subjected to alkaline saponification and subsequently, if desired, the basic carboxylic acid is liberated by treatment with a dilute organic or inorganic acid, or

i) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein at least one of the groups R and R¹ contains one or more amino groups,

an acylamine of general formula



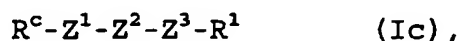
wherein

Z¹, Z² and Z³ are defined as in claims 1 to 6, R^b and R^{1b} have the meanings given in claims 1 to 6 for R and R¹, respectively, with the proviso that R^b is substituted by an acetylamino, propionylamino, cycloalkanecarbonylamino or benzoylamino group and/or R^{1b} is substituted by an acetylamino, propionylamino or benzoylamino group, is subjected to acid hydrolysis, or

- 182 -

j) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein the group R contains one or two primary or secondary amino groups,

a compound of general formula

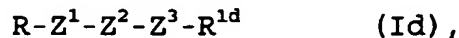


wherein

R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are defined as in claims 1 to 6 and R^c has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that this group contains one or two primary or secondary amino groups which are substituted by a tert.alkoxy-carbonyl group, is subjected to acid hydrolysis, or

k) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the carbonyl group, Z^2 denotes the group $-(CH_2)_2-$ and the group R^1 denotes a phenyl group which carries a tertiary amino group in the 4 position relative to the point of attachment but may otherwise be substituted as described in claims 1 to 6,

a compound of general formula



wherein

R is defined as in claims 1 to 6, Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the carbonyl group, Z^2 denotes the group $-(CH_2)_2-$ and the group R^{1d} denotes a phenyl group which carries a nucleophilically exchangeable function in the 4 position

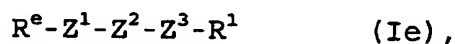
- 183 -

relative to the point of attachment, but may otherwise be substituted as described in claims 1 to 6,

is nucleophilically substituted with a corresponding amine or

l) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein the group R is uniformly mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by an aminocarbonyl, alkylaminocarbonyl or dialkylaminocarbonyl group,

a compound of general formula



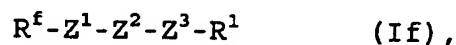
wherein

the group R^e has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6 with the proviso that it is mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by the carboxy group, and R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are defined as in claims 1 to 6,

is coupled with ammonia or a corresponding alkylamine or dialkylamine, or

m) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein the group R is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an acetylamino group or in the carbon skeleton by an acetylamino group and at the same time is substituted at one of the aza-nitrogen atoms by an acetyl group,

a compound of general formula



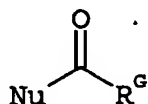
wherein

- 184 -

R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are defined as in claims 1 to 6 and the group R^f has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an amino group, is acylated or

n) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein the group R is defined as in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an acetylamino, propionylamino, cycloalkanecarbonylamino or benzoylamino group,

a compound of general formula

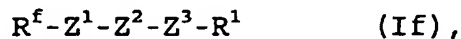


(XIV),

wherein

R^G denotes a methyl, ethyl, cycloalkyl or phenyl group and Nu denotes a leaving group

is coupled with a compound of general formula



wherein

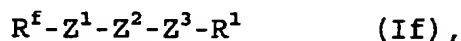
R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are defined as in claims 1 to 6 and the group R^f has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an amino group, or

o) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein

- 185 -

the group R is defined as in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an aminocarbonylamino group,

a compound of general formula



wherein

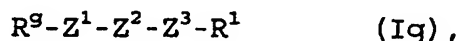
R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are defined as in claims 1 to 6 and the group R^f has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an amino group,

is reacted with cyanic acid, or

p) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein the group R is defined as in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that it is substituted by an aminomethyl group in the carbon skeleton, and

Z^2 has the meanings given in claims 1 to 6 with the exception of the group $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$,

a compound of general formula



wherein

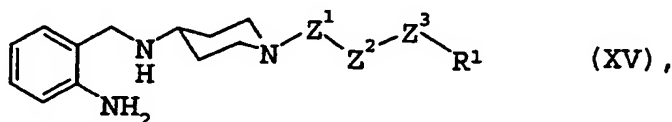
R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are defined as in claims 1 to 6 and the group R^g has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by a nitrile group,

is catalytically hydrogenated, or

- 186 -

q) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein R is the 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-thioxoquinazolin-3-yl]-1-piperidinyl or 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-cyanoiminoquinazolin-3-yl]-1-piperidinyl group,

a diamine of general formula



wherein

R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are defined as in claims 1 to 6,

is reacted with N,N'-thiocarbonyldiimidazole or cyanoimino-diphenylcarbonate and

subsequently, if desired, a compound of general formula I thus obtained which contains a C=C double bond is resolved into the geometric isomers thereof, and/or

a racemate of general formula I thus obtained is resolved into its isomers and/or

a compound of general formula I thus obtained which contains an acid or basic function is converted into the salts thereof.

Fetherstonhaugh & Co.
Ottawa, Canada
Patent Agents

therein. Compounds of general formula IX may easily be obtained from compounds of general formula IV analogously to methods known from the literature. Compounds of general formulae Ia, Ib, Ic, Id, Ie, If, Ig, I' and XV may easily be obtained using the methods described in the present application. 4-Aryl-4-oxobutanoic acids of general formula VI may either easily be prepared analogously to methods known from the literature or may be obtained by catalytic hydrogenation of 4-aryl-4-oxo-2-butenic acids, which may in turn be synthesised from suitable alkanophenones by a process described in published German patent applications 2 047 806 and 2 103 749, by condensation with glyoxylic acid hydrate under acid conditions. Compounds of general formula VII may be obtained from VI by conventional methods known from the literature.

The compounds of general formula I obtained may, if they contain suitable basic functions, be converted, particularly for pharmaceutical use, into their physiologically acceptable salts with inorganic or organic acids. Suitable acids include for example hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, phosphoric acid, nitric acid, sulphuric acid, methanesulphonic acid, p-toluenesulphonic acid, acetic acid, fumaric acid, succinic acid, lactic acid, mandelic acid, malic acid, citric acid, tartaric acid or maleic acid.

Moreover, the new compounds of formula (I), if they contain an acid function, for example a carboxy group, may if desired be converted into the addition salts thereof with inorganic or organic bases, particularly for pharmaceutical use into the physiologically acceptable addition salts thereof. Suitable bases for this include, for example, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, ammonia, cyclohexylamine,

- 71 -

dicyclohexylamine, ethanolamine, diethanolamine and triethanolamine.

The new compounds of general formula I and the physiologically acceptable salts thereof have CGRP-antagonistic properties and exhibit good affinities in CGRP receptor binding studies. The compounds display CGRP-antagonistic properties in the pharmacological test systems described hereinafter.

The following experiments were carried out to demonstrate the affinity of compounds of general formula I for human CGRP-receptors and their antagonistic properties:

A. Binding studies with SK-N-MC cells (expressing the human CGRP receptor)

SK-N-MC cells are cultivated in "Dulbecco's modified Eagle medium". The medium is removed from confluent cultures. The cells are washed twice with PBS buffer (Gibco 041-04190 M), detached by the addition of PBS buffer mixed with 0.02% EDTA, and isolated by centrifuging. After resuspension in 20 ml of "Balanced Salts Solution" [BSS (in mM): NaCl 120, KCl 5.4, NaHCO₃ 16.2, MgSO₄ 0.8, NaHPO₄ 1.0, CaCl₂ 1.8, D-glucose 5.5, HEPES 30, pH 7.40] the cells are centrifuged twice at 100 x g and resuspended in BSS. After the number of cells has been determined, the cells are homogenised using an Ultra-Turrax and centrifuged for 10 minutes at 3000 x g. The supernatant is discarded and the pellet is recentrifuged in Tris buffer (10 mM Tris, 50 mM NaCl, 5 mM MgCl₂, 1 mM EDTA, pH 7.40) enriched with 1% bovine serum albumin and 0.1% bacitracin, and resuspended (1 ml / 1000000 cells). The homogenised product is frozen at -80°C. The membrane preparations are stable for more than 6 weeks under these conditions.

After thawing, the homogenised product is diluted 1:10 with assay buffer (50 mM Tris, 150 mM NaCl, 5 mM MgCl₂, 1 mM EDTA, pH 7.40) and homogenised for 30 seconds with an Ultra-Turrax. 230 μ l of the homogenised product are incubated for 180 minutes at ambient temperature with 50 pM ¹²⁵I-iodotyrosyl-Calcitonin-Gene-Related Peptide (Amersham) and increasing concentrations of the test substances in a total volume of 250 μ l. The incubation is ended by rapid filtration through GF/B-glass fibre filters treated with polyethyleneimine (0.1%) using a cell harvester. The protein-bound radioactivity is measured using a gamma counter. Non-specific binding is defined as the bound radioactivity in the presence of 1 μ M human CGRP-alpha during incubation.

The concentration binding curves are analysed using computer-aided non-linear curve matching.

The compounds of general formula I show IC₅₀ values \leq 10000 nM in the test described.

B. CGRP Antagonism in SK-N-MC cells

SK-N-MC cells (1 million cells) are washed twice with 250 μ l incubation buffer (Hanks' HEPES, 1 mM 3-isobutyl-1-methylxanthine, 1% BSA, pH 7.4) and pre-incubated at 37°C for 15 minutes. After the addition of CGRP (10 μ l) as agonist in increasing concentrations (10⁻¹¹ to 10⁻⁶ M), or additionally the substance in 3 to 4 different concentrations, the mixture is incubated for another 15 minutes.

Intracellular cAMP is then extracted by the addition of 20 μ l of 1M HCl and centrifugation (2000 x g, 4°C, for 15 minutes).

- 73 -

The supernatants are frozen in liquid nitrogen and stored at -20°C.

The cAMP contents of the samples are determined by radioimmunoassay (Messrs. Amersham) and the pA₂ values of antagonistically acting substances are determined graphically.

The compounds of general formula I exhibit CGRP-antagonistic properties in the *in vitro* test model described, in a dosage range of between 10⁻¹¹ to 10⁻⁵ M.

In view of their pharmacological properties the compounds of general formula I and the salts thereof with physiologically acceptable acids or bases are thus suitable for the acute and prophylactic treatment of headaches, particularly migraine or cluster headaches. Moreover, the compounds of general formula I also have a positive effect on the following diseases: non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus ("NIDDM"), cardiovascular diseases, morphine tolerance, skin diseases, particularly thermal and radiation-induced skin damage including sunburn, inflammatory diseases, e.g. inflammatory diseases of the joints (arthritis), inflammatory lung diseases, allergic rhinitis, asthma, diseases accompanied by excessive vasodilatation and consequent reduced circulation of blood through the tissues, e.g. shock and sepsis. The symptoms of menopausal hot flushes in oestrogen-deficient women caused by vasodilatation and increased blood flow are favourably affected by the CGRP-antagonists of the present application in a preventive and acute-therapeutic capacity, this therapeutic approach being distinguished from hormone replacement by the absence of side effects. Furthermore, the compounds of general formula I have a general pain-relieving effect.

The dosage required to achieve a corresponding effect is conveniently 0.001 to 30 mg/kg of body weight, preferably 0.01 to 5 mg/kg of body weight, when administered intravenously or subcutaneously and 0.01 to 50 mg/kg of body weight, preferably 0.1 to 30 mg/kg of body weight when administered orally, nasally or by inhalation, 1 to 3 x a day in each case.

For this, the compounds of general formula I prepared according to the invention, optionally combined with other active substances such as e.g. antiemetics, prokinetics, neuroleptics, antidepressants, neurokinine antagonists, anti-convulsants, histamine-H1 receptor antagonists, antimuscarinics, β -blockers, α -agonists and α -antagonists, ergot alkaloids, mild analgesics, non-steroidal antiinflammatories, corticosteroids, calcium antagonists, 5-HT_{1D} agonists or other anti-migraine agents, together with one or more inert conventional carriers and/or diluents, e.g. with corn starch, lactose, glucose, microcrystalline cellulose, magnesium stearate, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, citric acid, tartaric acid, water, water/ethanol, water/glycerol, water/sorbitol, water/polyethylene glycol, propylene glycol, cetylstearyl alcohol, carboxymethylcellulose or fatty substances such as hard fat or suitable mixtures thereof, may be formulated into conventional galenic preparations such as plain or coated tablets, capsules, powders, suspensions, solutions, metered dose aerosols or suppositories.

The active substances which may be used for the abovementioned combinations thus include, for example, meloxicam, ergotamine, dihydroergotamine, metoclopramide, domperidone, diphenhydramine, cyclizine, promethazine, chlorpromazine, dexamethasone, flunarizine, dextropropoxyphene, meperidine, propranolol, nadolol, atenolol, clonidine, indoramine,

- 75 -

carbamazepine, phenytoin, valproate, amitriptylin, lidocaine, diltiazem or sumatriptan and other 5-HT_{1D}-agonists such as, for example, naratriptan, zolmitriptan, avitriptan, rizatriptan and eletriptan. The dosage of these active substances is expediently 1/5 of the lowest recommended dose to 1/1 of the normally recommended dose, i.e. for example 20 to 100 mg of sumatriptan.

The invention further relates to the use of the compounds of general formula I as valuable adjuvants for the production and purification (by affinity chromatography) of antibodies as well as in RIA and ELISA assays, after suitable radioactive labelling, for example by direct labelling with ¹²⁵I or ¹³¹I or by tritiation of suitable precursors, for example by replacing halogen atoms with tritium, and as a diagnostic or analytical adjuvant in neurotransmitter research.

The Examples which follow are intended to illustrate the invention:

Preliminary remarks:

Satisfactory elementary analyses, IR, UV, ¹H-NMR and generally also mass spectra have been obtained for all the compounds. Unless otherwise stated, R_f values were obtained using ready-made silica gel TLC plates 60 F₂₅₄ (E. Merck, Darmstadt, Item no. 5729) without chamber saturation. If no detailed information is given as to the configuration, it is not clear whether it is a pure enantiomer or whether partial or even complete racemisation has occurred. The following eluants or mixtures of eluants were used for the chromatography:

El A = ethyl acetate/methanol 100/5 v/v

- 76 -

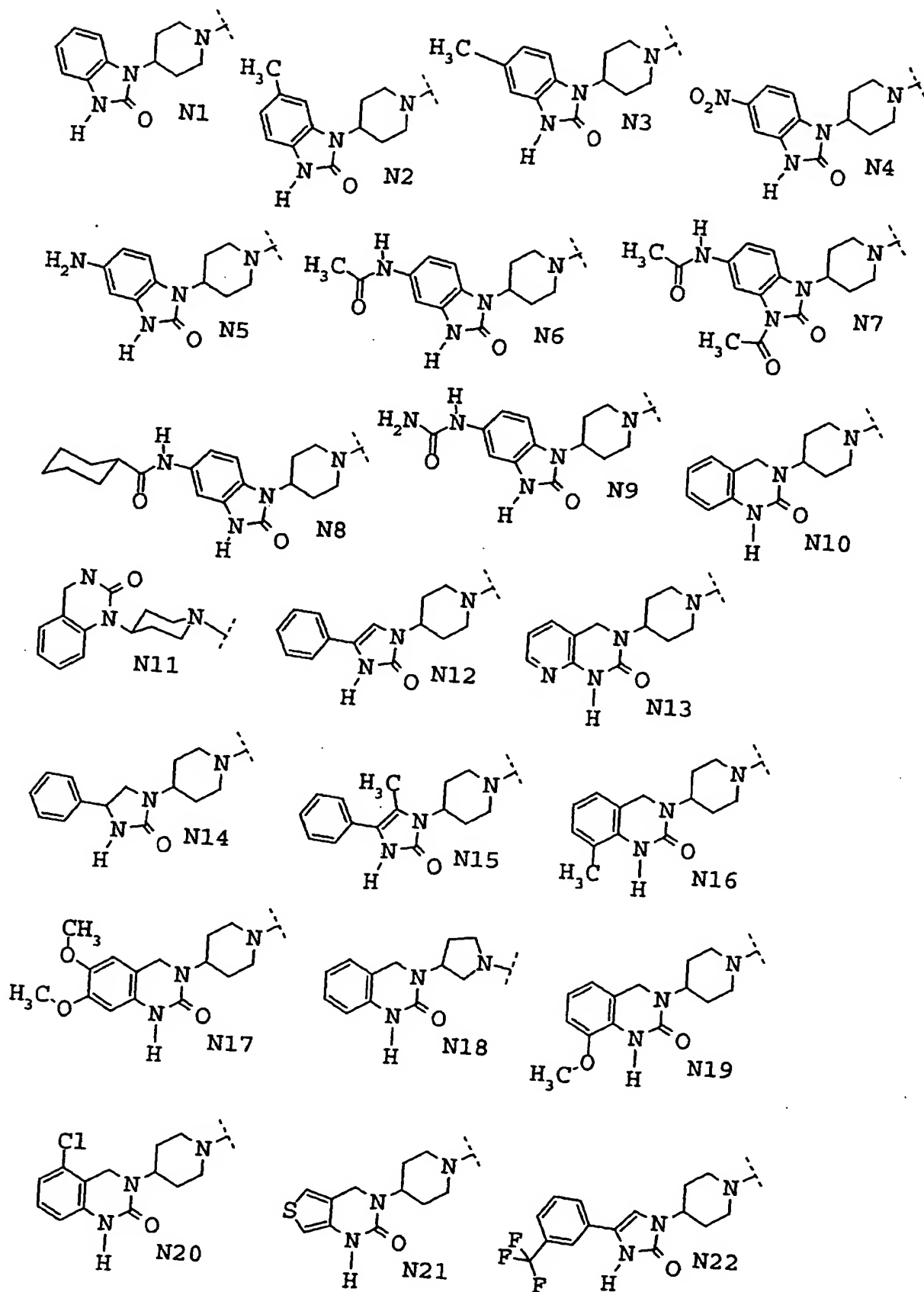
El B = ethyl acetate/methanol 80/20 v/v
 El C = ethyl acetate/methanol/conc. ammonia 80/20/1
 v/v/v
 El D = dichloromethane/cyclohexane/methanol/conc. ammonia
 350/75/75/10 v/v/v/v
 El E = ethyl acetate/glacial acetic acid 99/1 v/v
 El F = ethyl acetate/methanol/glacial acetic acid 90/10/1
 v/v/v
 El G = dichloromethane/methanol/conc. ammonia 90/10/1 v/v/v
 El H = petroleum ether/ethyl acetate 1/1 v/v
 El I = dichloromethane/methanol/glacial acetic acid 90/10/1.5
 v/v/v
 El K = dichloromethane/isopropanol 9/1 v/v
 El L = ethyl acetate/methanol 9/1 v/v
 El M = dichloromethane/methanol/conc. ammonia 75/25/5 v/v/v
 El N = dichloromethane/ethyl acetate 1/1 v/v
 El O = dichloromethane/methanol 95/5 v/v

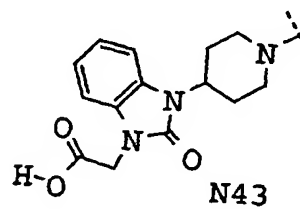
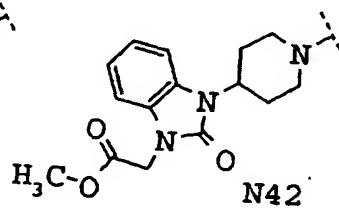
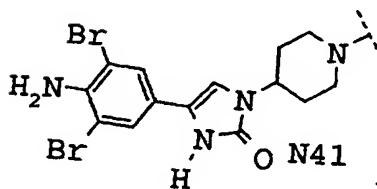
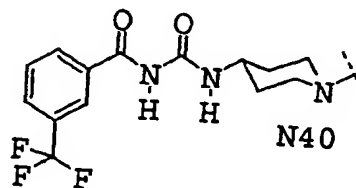
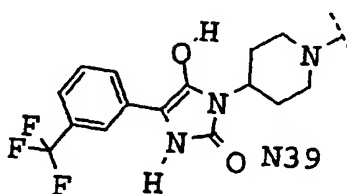
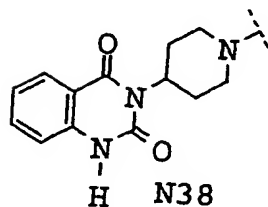
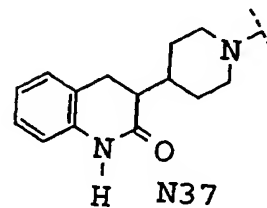
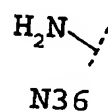
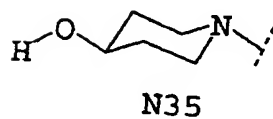
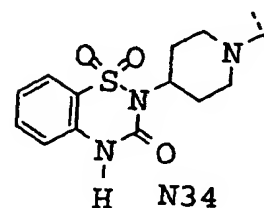
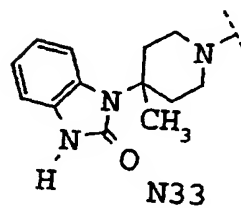
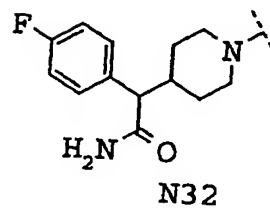
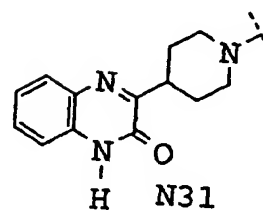
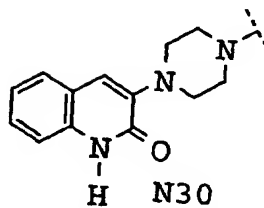
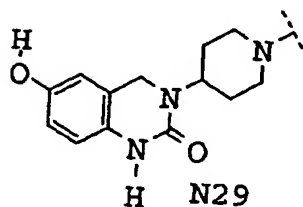
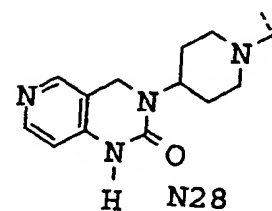
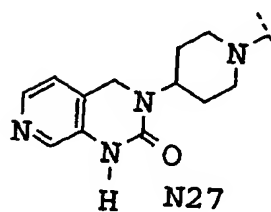
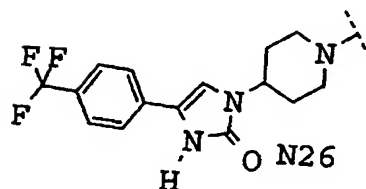
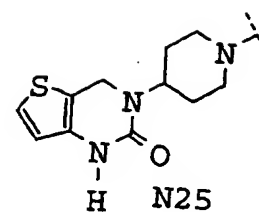
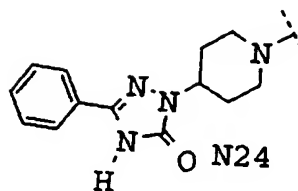
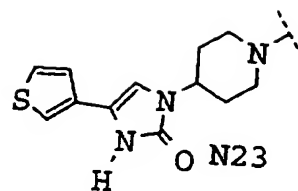
The following abbreviations are used in the description of the experiments:

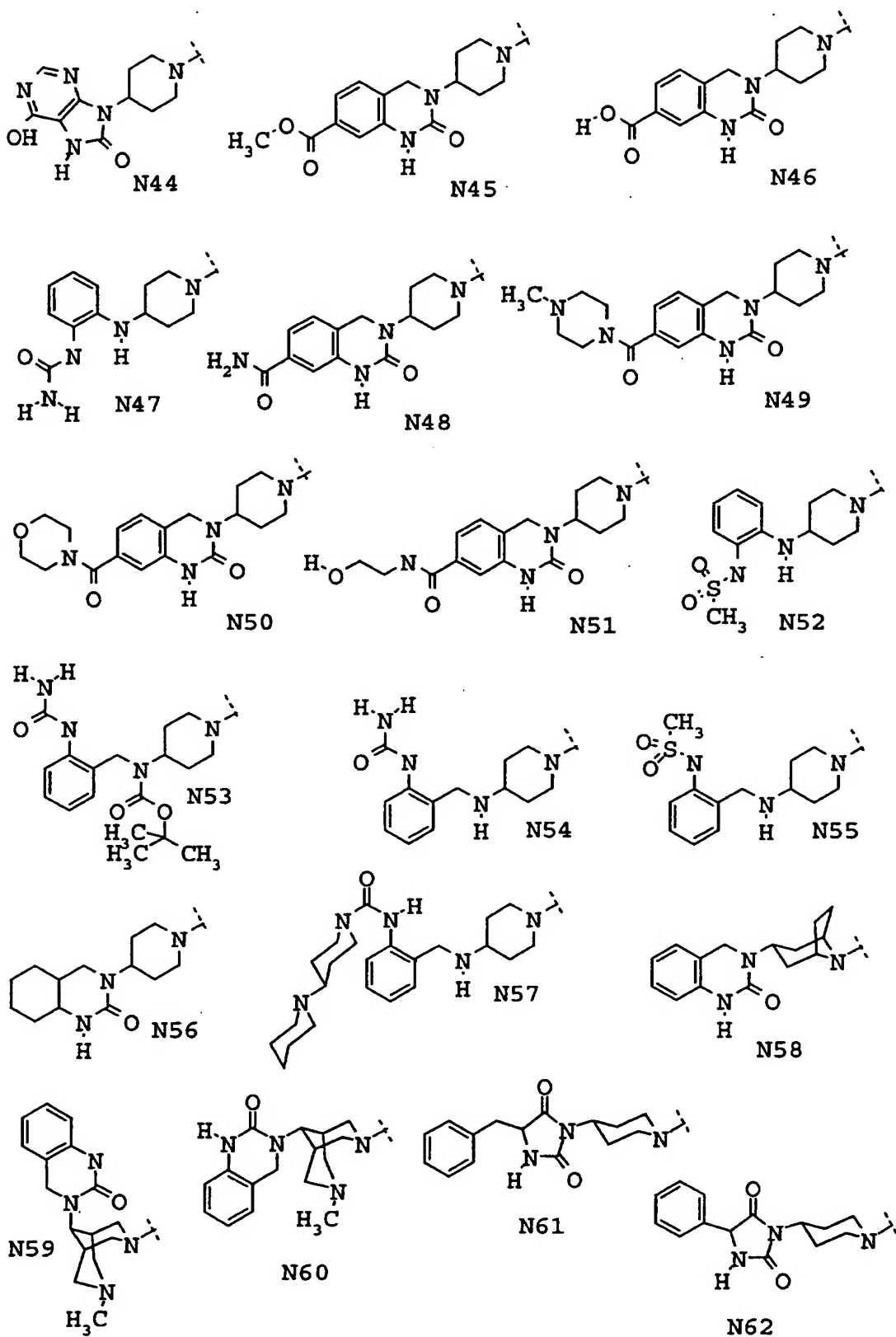
Mp.: melting point
 (D): (decomposition)
 DIEA: N,N-diisopropyl-ethylamine
 Boc: (1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl
 TBTU: 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium-
 tetrafluoroborate
 HOBt: 1-hydroxybenzotriazole-hydrate
 CDT: 1,1'-carbonyldi-(1,2,4-triazole)
 THF: tetrahydrofuran
 DMF: dimethyl formamide
 EE: ethyl acetate
 PE: petroleum ether
 LM: solvents
 I. No.: Item number

- 77 -

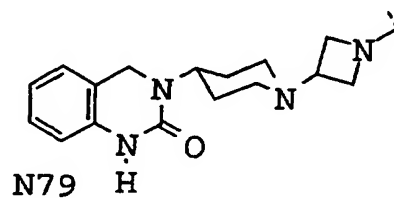
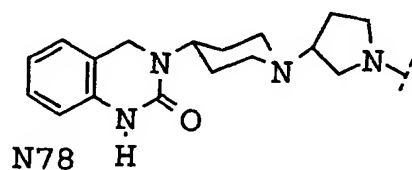
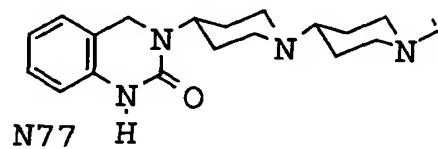
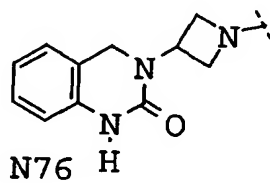
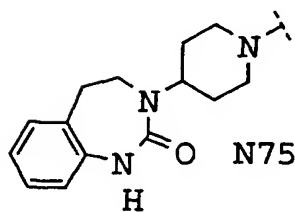
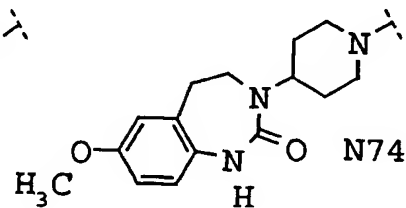
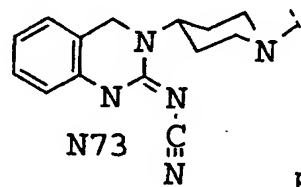
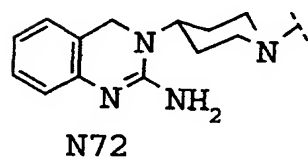
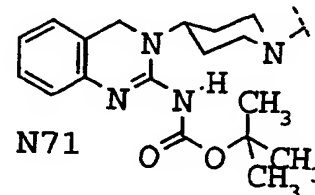
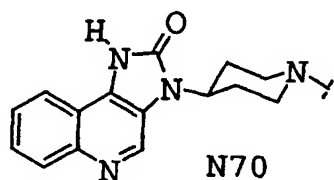
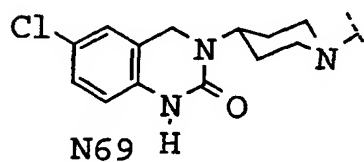
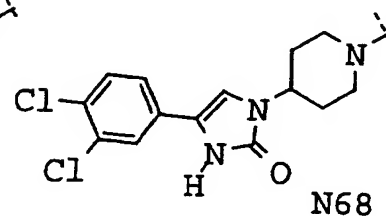
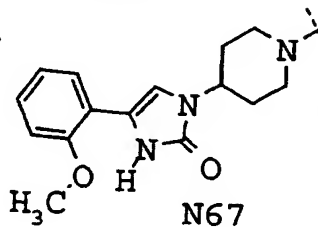
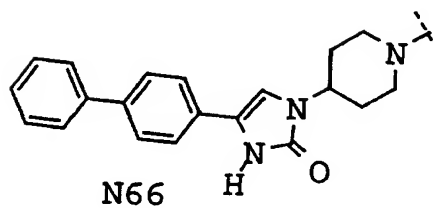
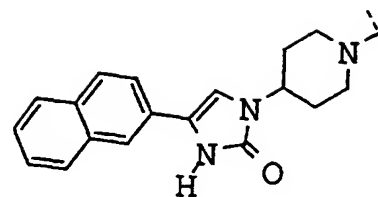
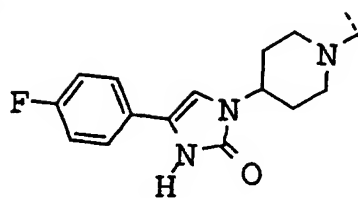
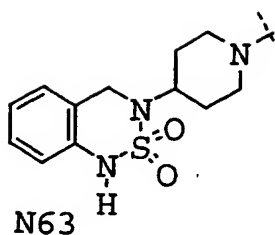
The meanings of the symbols consisting of letters and numbers used in the Examples are shown in the following summary:

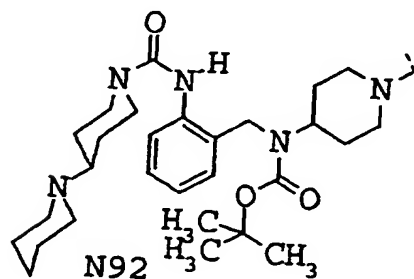
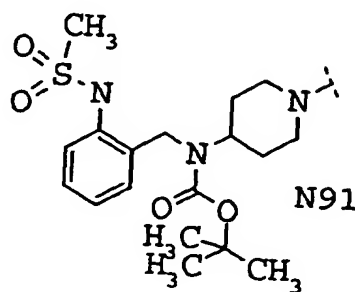
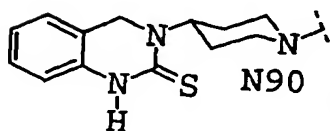
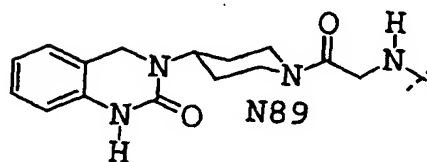
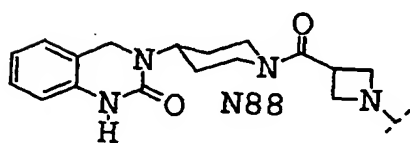
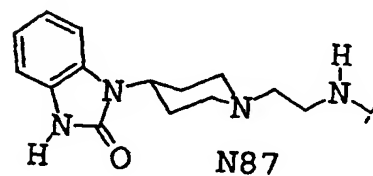
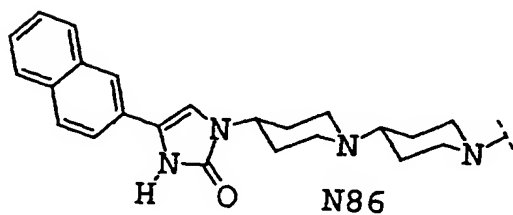
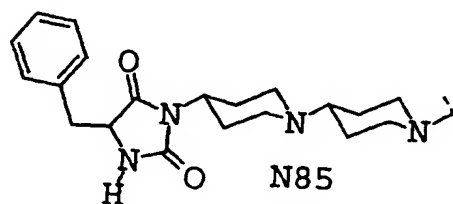
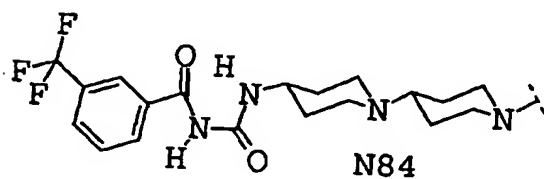
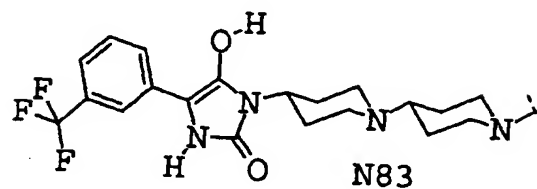
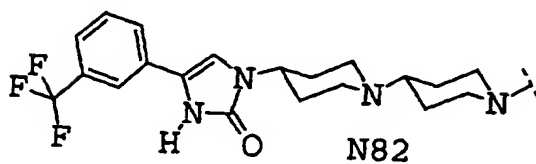
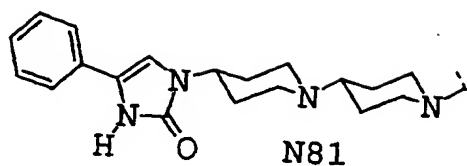
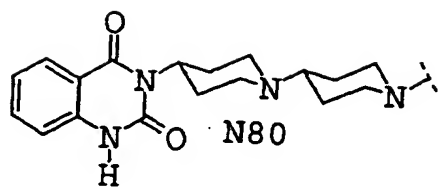


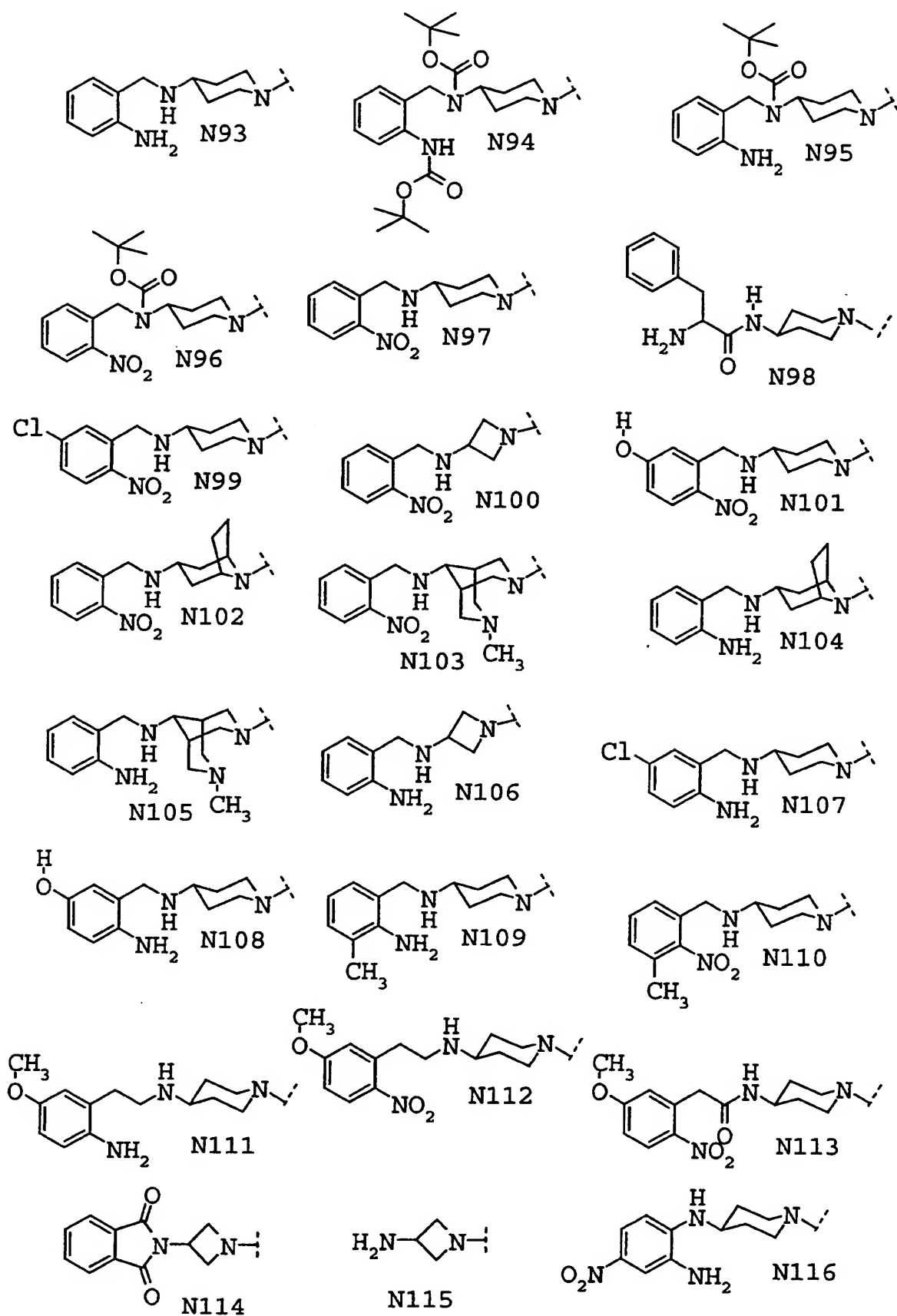


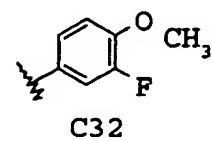
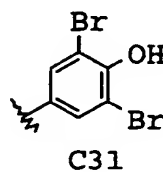
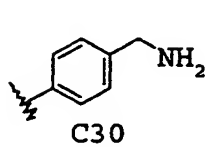
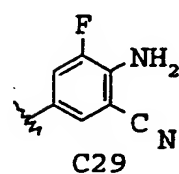
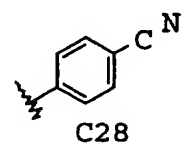
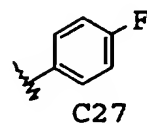
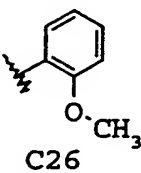
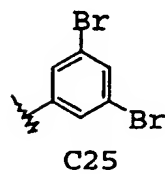
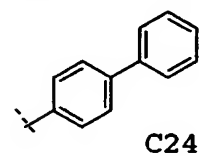
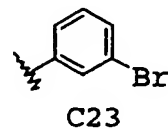
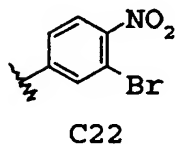
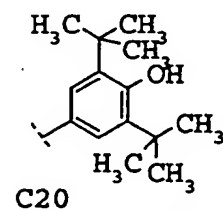
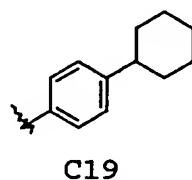
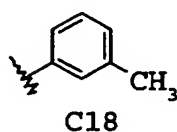
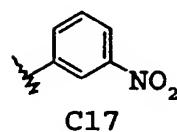
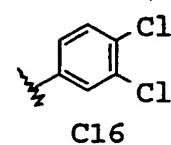
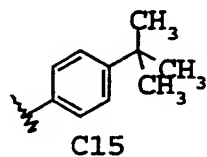
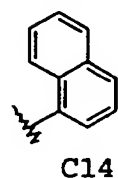
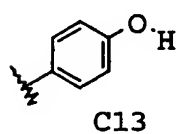
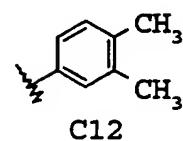
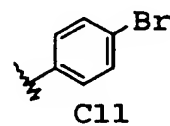
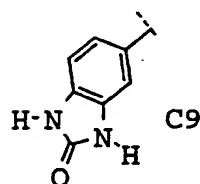
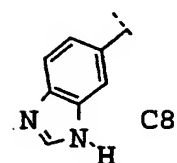
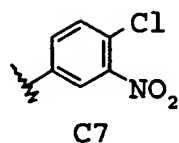
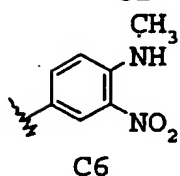
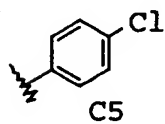
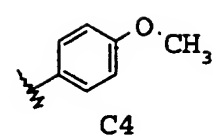
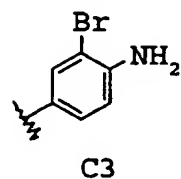
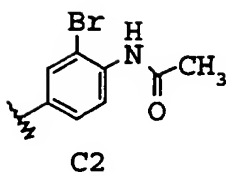
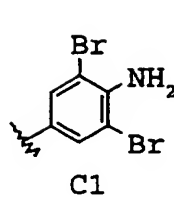


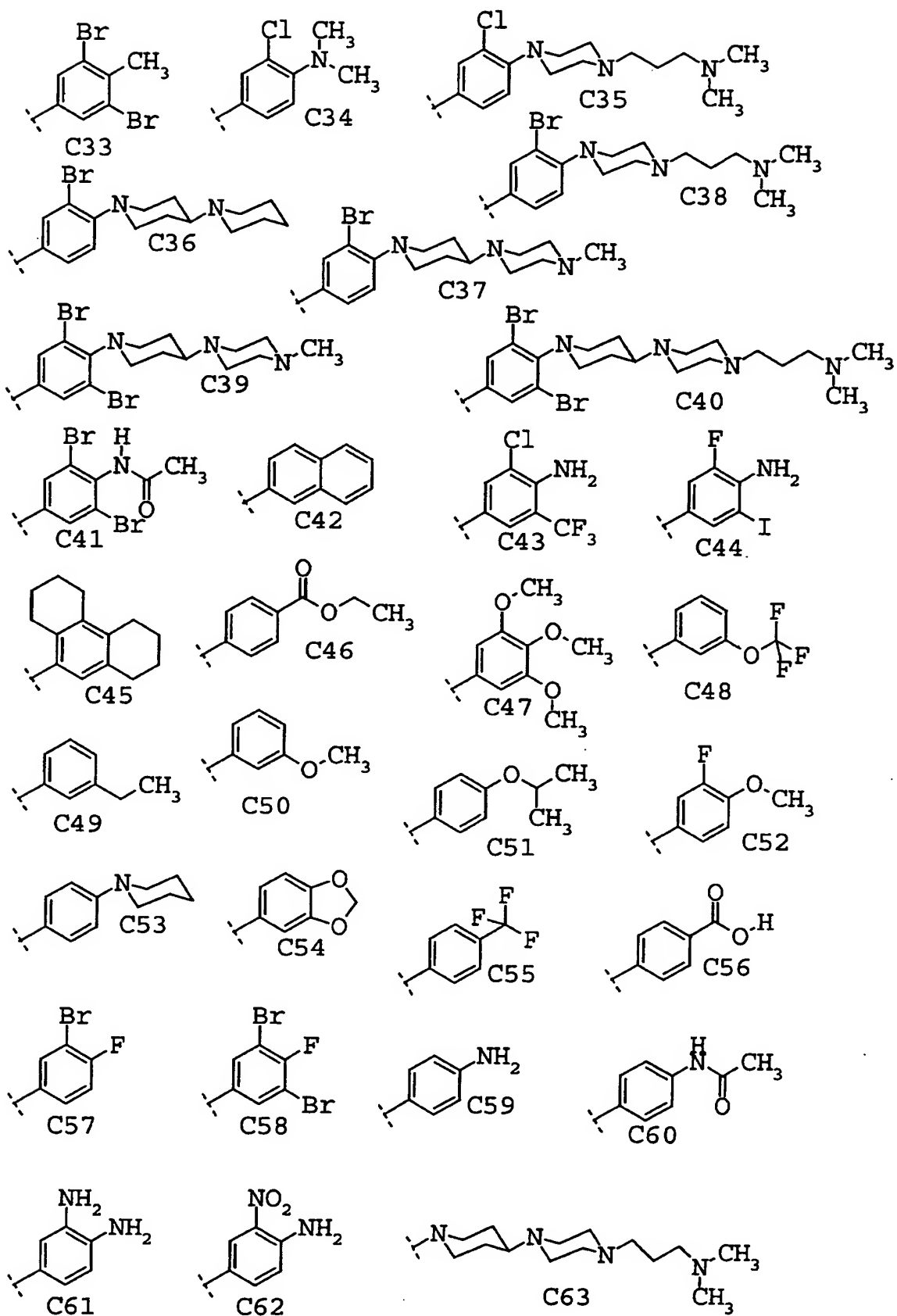
- 81 -



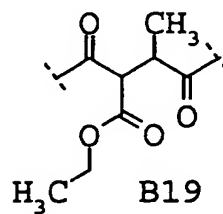
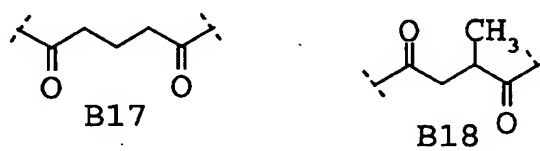
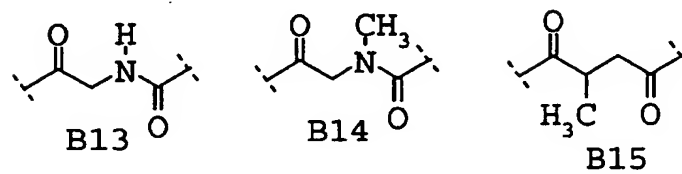
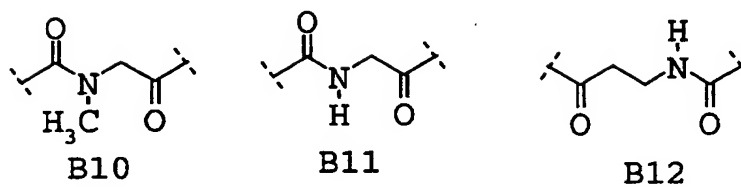
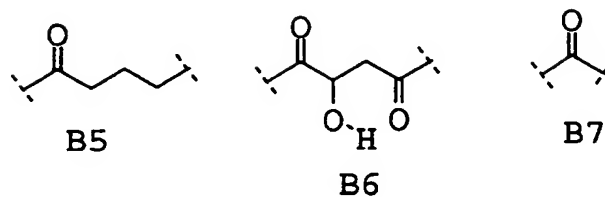
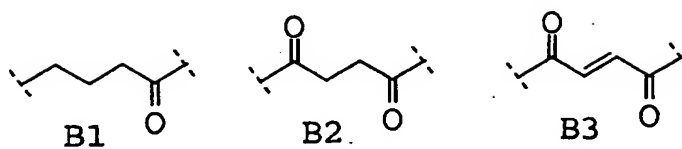








- 86 -

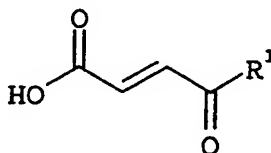


A. Preparation of intermediate compoundsExample A11-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-chloro-1-butanone

115 ml (2.107 mol) of bromine were added dropwise to a solution of 262 g (1.119 mol) of 1-(4-aminophenyl)-4-chloro-1-butanone-hydrochloride (base: m.p. 88-89°C (decomp.), hydrochloride: m.p. 164-167°C (decomp.), prepared by reacting 1-(4-acetylaminophenyl)-4-chloro-1-butanone with semi-concentrated hydrochloric acid) in a mixture of 1700 ml of glacial acetic acid and 850 ml of water, with stirring and external cooling with ice water. The precipitate formed was suction filtered, washed thoroughly twice with an ice-cold mixture of 170 ml of glacial acetic acid and 85 ml of water, then with pure water, and dried in vacuo at a temperature of 40°C. Yield: 293 g (74 % of theoretical). M.p.: 83-84 C.

Example A2

Preparation of compounds of the general structure:

(E)-4-(3,5-dibromo-4-fluorophenyl)-4-oxo-2-buten-1-ol

A mixture of 14.8 g (50.12 mmol) of 3,5-dibromo-4-fluoroacetophenone, 6.9 g (74.92 mmol) of glyoxylic acid hydrate and 150 ml glacial acetic acid was refluxed for 20 hours. The glacial acetic acid was half distilled off, then water was added to the cooled mixture until a yellow precipitate was formed. The product precipitated was suction filtered, washed

- 88 -

thoroughly with water and dried in a circulating air dryer until a constant weight was achieved. After recrystallisation from ethanol, 4.9 g (28 % of theoretical) of slightly yellowish crystals were obtained, R_f 0.82 (E1 F).

IR (KBr): 1705, 1672 (C=O)

MS : ESI: (M-H)⁻ = 348/350/352 (Br₂)

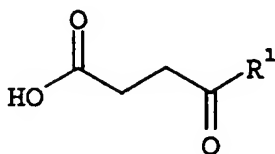
The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	Rf	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
OH	B3	C11	condensation with the addition of TsOH	67				1691, 1666 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C12	condensation with the addition of TsOH	72				1695, 1660 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C13	condensation with the addition of TsOH	55			M+ = 192	1695, 1653 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C14	condensation with the addition of TsOH	51				1701, 1668 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C15	condensation with the addition of TsOH	79				1697, 1662 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C16		52			M+ = 243/245/247 (Cl ₂)	1709, 1689, 1666 (C=O)	139-141 (EtOH); yellow
OH	B3	C17	condensation with the addition of TsOH	59				1697, 1678 (C=O)	orange crystals
OH	B3	C18	condensation with the addition of TsOH	66				1705, 1687, 1666 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C19	condensation with the addition of TsOH	86				1699, 1664 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C20	condensation with the addition of TsOH	82				1703, 1660 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C21	condensation with the addition of TsOH	73				1712, 1691, 1664 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C22	condensation with the addition of TsOH	65			M+ = 299/301 (Br)	1707, 1678 (C=O); 1520, 1358 (NO ₂)	orange-yellow crystals
OH	B3	C23	condensation with the addition of TsOH	74				1714, 1697, 1669 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	Rf	MS	IR [cm-1]	m.p. [°C]
OH	B3	C26		59				1703.0, 1664.5 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C27		43				1708.8, 1666.4 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C28		15				2233.4 (CN); 1712.7, 1666.4 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C29		4			M+ = 234	3429.2, 3350.2 (NH2); 2229.6 (CN); 1697.3, 1647.1 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C1		21					slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C33	condensation with the addition of TsOH	78				1701, 1674 (C=O)	210-215; yellow crystals
OH	B3	C34	condensation with the addition of TsOH	33			(M+H)+ = 252.1, 254.1 (Cl)	1711, 1662 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C46	condensation with the addition of TsOH	31					yellow crystals
OH	B3	C47	condensation with the addition of TsOH	36					yellow crystals
OH	B3	C48	condensation with the addition of TsOH	64					slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C49	condensation with the addition of TsOH	72					slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C50	condensation with the addition of TsOH	33				1700, 1670 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C51	condensation with the addition of TsOH	54				1701, 1664 (C=O)	yellow crystals
OH	B3	C52	condensation with the addition of TsOH	32				1707, 1662 (C=O)	yellow crystals
OH	B3	C53	condensation with the addition of TsOH	50			M+ = 259	1718 (C=O)	orange-yellow crystals
OH	B3	C54	condensation with the addition of TsOH	34					yellow crystals
OH	B3	C55	condensation with the addition of TsOH	42	E	0.75		1709, 1693, 1668 (C=O)	slightly yellowish crystals
OH	B3	C57		23	F	0.69	M+ = 271/274 (Br)	1709, 1689, 1664 (C=O)	138-140; slightly yellowish

Example A3

Preparation of compounds of the general structure:

4-(3-bromo-4-fluorophenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid

A solution of 6.2 g (0.023 mol) of (E)-4-(3-bromo-4-fluorophenyl)-4-oxo-2-butenic acid in a mixture of 200 ml ethanol and 25 ml tetrahydrofuran was hydrogenated in the presence of 1.0 g of 10% platinum/charcoal at ambient temperature under a pressure of 50 psi until the uptake of hydrogen was complete. The residue remaining after the catalyst and solvent had been eliminated crystallised spontaneously and after being washed thoroughly with diisopropylether yielded 1.7 g (27 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals, m.p. 108-110°C and R_f 0.73 (El F).

IR (KBr): 1711, 1687 (C=O) cm^{-1}

MS : ESI: $(\text{M}-\text{H})^- = 273/275$ (Br)

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
OH	B2	C26	H ₂ / R-Ni / EE	51				1708.8, 1664.5 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B2	C27	H ₂ / R-Ni / EE	61				1695.3, 1678.0 (C=O)	88-90 (EtOH/H ₂ O 1/2 v/v)
OH	B2	C29	H ₂ / R-Ni, EE/MeOH (2/3 v/v)	90				3494.8, 3375.2 (NH ₂); 2223.8 (CN); 1714.6, 1674.1 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B2	C16	H ₂ / Pd-C, EtOH/THF (10/1 v/v)	37	F	0.78	ESI: (M-H) ⁻ = 245/247/249 (Cl ₂)	1707, 1689 (C=O)	157-159
OH	B2	C58	H ₂ / Pt-C, EtOH/THF (5/1 v/v)	55	F	0.88	M ⁺ = 351/353/355 (Br ₂)	1705, 1689 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B2	C33	H ₂ / Pt-C, EtOH/THF (10/1 v/v)	99				1701, 1684 (C=O)	colourless crystals

Example A44-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid

A solution of 73.7 g (0.461 mol) of bromine in 150 ml glacial acetic acid was added dropwise at ambient temperature to a solution of 50.0 g (0.213 mol) of 4-(4-acetylaminophenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid in 500 ml of 80% acetic acid. The mixture was finally heated to 50°C for a further 30 minutes. The precipitate formed after cooling was suction filtered, washed with diethylether and dried in a circulating air dryer at 40°C. The desired compound of m.p. 200-202°C was obtained in a yield of 33.1 g (44 % of theoretical).

MS : M⁺ = 349/351/353 (Br₂)

IR (KBr): 3487.1, 3382.9 (NH₂); 1701.1, 1672.2 (C=O) cm⁻¹

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
OH	B2	C1	2 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH	44			M ⁺ = 349/351/353 (Br ₂)	3487.1, 3382.9 (NH ₂); 1701.1, 1672.2 (C=O)	200-202
H ₃ CO	B2	C1	2 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH / NaOAc	98					colourless crystals (from MeOH)
OH	B2	C2	1 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH / NaOAc	26			M ⁺ = 313/315 (Br)	3315.4 (NH), 1708.8, 1670.3 (C=O)	186-187 (diisopropyl- ether)
OH	B5	C1	2 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH / NaOAc	95				1699.2 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B5	C2	1 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH	79				3265.1 (NH), 1693.4, 1662.5 (C=O)	colourless crystals (from isopropanol / water 1/2 v/v)
OH	B17	C1	2 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH	89				3487, 3388 (NH ₂); 1691, 1662 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B18	C1	2 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH	49	F	0.60		3458.2, 3361.7 (NH ₂); 1739.7 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B15	C1	2 mol Br ₂ / 80% AcOH / NaOAc	75			ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 363/365/367 (Br ₂)	1743 (C=O)	colourless crystals

Example A5

(3,5-dibromo-4-fluorophenyl)-ethanone and (3-bromo-4-fluorophenyl)-ethanone

69 g (0.5 mol) of p-fluoroacetophenone were added dropwise to 200.0 g (1.5 mol) of finely powdered aluminium chloride with stirring, during which time the mixture heated up to 70°C. It was kept at 75 - 80°C for another 20 minutes and then 184 g (1.15 mol) of bromine were added at this temperature within 2.5 hours. Finally, the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C for another 3 hours. After being cooled and decolorised the mixture was divided between water and tert.butylmethyl ether. Working up the organic phase yielded 130 g of a brownish-black oil which was separated into 2 fractions on silica gel using toluene as eluant:

- a) 41.2 g (28 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals, m.p. 59-62°C and R_f = 0.53 (toluene), which were identified as 1-(3,5-dibromo-4-fluorophenyl)-1-ethanone by spectroscopy.

- 93 -

IR (KBr): 1685 (C=O) cm^{-1} MS : M^+ = 294/296/298 (Br_2)

b) 46.0 g (42 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals, m.p. 52-55°C and R_f = 0.41 (toluene), which were identified as 1-(3-bromo-4-fluorophenyl)-1-ethanone by spectroscopy.

IR (KBr): 1682 (C=O) cm^{-1} MS : M^+ = 216/218 (Br)

The following was obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
-	H_3CCO	C33	$\text{Br}_2 / \text{AlCl}_3$	76		1685 (C=O)	94-98 (isopropanol)

Example A6 γ -oxo-1H-benzimidazol-5-butanoic acid

Prepared analogously to Example 5 from methyl γ -oxo-1H-benzimidazol-5-butanoate, lithium hydroxide and water in the presence of tetrahydrofuran in a yield of 78 % of theoretical. Colourless crystals, m.p. 251-255°C (decomp.).

IR (KBr): 1672.2 (C=O) cm^{-1}

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
OH	B2	C1	NaOH / dioxane / H_2O	90	3485.2, 3382.9 (NH_2); 1701.1, 1672.2 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B2	C41	NaOH / dioxane / H_2O	89	3247.9 (NH); 1710.8, 1689.5 (C=O)	
H_3CO	B14	C1	NaOH / dioxane / H_2O	55		
OH	B2	C45	NaOH / MeOH / H_2O	96	1697, 1674 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B2	C9	LiOH / THF / H_2O	99	3356.6, 3223.2 (NH); 1718.5, 1689.5, 1660.6 (C=O)	colourless crystals

Example A74-(3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid

A solution of 3.5 g (0.01 mol) of 4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid in 50 ml of 1N aqueous sulphuric acid was treated dropwise with a solution of 0.76 g (0.011 mol) of sodium nitrite in 10 ml of water while maintaining a reaction temperature of -5 to 0°C. The mixture was stirred for a further 30 minutes at a temperature of 0°C, then 50 ml of hypophosphorous acid were added dropwise while maintaining the same temperature and stirred for another 1 hour at a temperature of 0°C. The mixture was decolorised and a colourless crystalline substance was precipitated. The mixture was diluted with 100 ml of water, the precipitate formed was suction filtered, washed thoroughly with water and then dried in a circulating air dryer. 3.1 g (92 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained, m.p. 137-138°C.

IR (KBr): 1705.0 (C=O) cm^{-1}

MS : $M^+ = 334/336/338$ (Br_2)

Example A81-[[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-1,3-dihydro-4-(3-trifluoromethylphenyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone-bis-(trifluoroacetate)

Prepared analogously to Example 7 from 1-[1'-(dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-1,3-dihydro-4-(3-trifluoromethylphenyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone and trifluoroacetic acid in the presence of dichloromethane as solvent in a yield of 71 % of theoretical. Colourless crystals.

IR (KBr): 1679.7 (C=O) cm^{-1}

MS : $M^+ = 394$

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
N87	H	-	CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	97				1701.1, 1674.1 (C=O)	amorphous bis- (trifluoroacetate)
N81	H	-	CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	47			M ⁺ = 326	1678 (C=O)	amorphous bis- (trifluoroacetate)
N93	B2	C1	from N94-B2-C1 with CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	59			M ⁺ = 536/538/540 (Br ₂)		Colourless crystalline trifluoroacetate
N89	H	-	CF ₃ CO ₂ H	77			M ⁺ = 288	1662.5 (C=O); 1207.4, 1176.5, 1132.1 (trifluoroacetate)	Colourless crystalline trifluoroacetate
N4	H	-	CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	37				3292.3 (NH); 1714.6 (C=O); 1516.0, 1494.7, 1334.7 (NO ₂)	
N85	H	-	CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	99				1712, 1676 (C=O)	Colourless crystalline trifluoroacetate
N86	H	-	CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	96					Colourless crystalline bis- (trifluoroacetate)
N98	CH ₂ Ph	-	from Boc-N98-CH ₂ Ph and CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	92	D	0.68		3485, 3379 (NH, NH ₂); 1670.3 (C=O)	Colourless crystalline bis- (trifluoroacetate), from diisopropylether / ethanol 9/1 v/v
N93	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N95-CH ₂ Ph and CF ₃ CO ₂ H / CH ₂ Cl ₂	99	D	0.74			

Example A9

4-amino-3-bromobenzenebutanoic acid

A mixture of 0.13 g (0.008662 mol) of 4-acetylamino-3-bromobenzenebutanoic acid and 10 ml of conc. hydrochloric acid was refluxed for 24 hours. The colourless, needle-shaped crystals of R_f 0.53 (eluant: dichloromethane/methanol 9/1 v/v) precipitated after cooling were identified by spectroscopy as the hydrochloride of the desired 4-amino-3-bromobenzenebutanoic acid. The crystals were dissolved in a little water, and the solution formed was adjusted to pH 6 using concentrated potassium carbonate solution. The

precipitate was suction filtered, washed with water and dried in a circulating air dryer at 60°C. Yield: 1.35 g (60 % of theoretical).

IR (KBr): 3440.8, 3357.9 (NH); 1693.4 (C=O) cm^{-1}

The following was obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R _f	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
OH	B17	C59	conc. HCl	92				3464, 3352 (NH); 1705, 1653 (C=O)	colourless crystals
OH	B18	C59	conc. HCl	92	I	0.66		3483.2, 3398.4, 3375.2 (NH ₂); 1705.0, 1656.8 (C=O)	170-172 (water)
OH	B15	C59	from ethyl 4-(4-aminophenyl)-2-ethoxycarbonyl-3-methyl-4-oxobutanoate; ethanolic HCl/ semiconc. HCl 5/2 v/v	60	F	0.8	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 208	1712, 1689 (C=O)	

Example A10

3-{1-[4-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone

Prepared analogously to Example 2 from 3,4-dichloro- γ -oxobenzenebutanoic acid and 3-(4-piperidinyl)-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone in the presence of TBTU in a yield of 73 % of theoretical. Colourless crystals, m.p. 224-226°C and R_f 0.15 (El EE).

IR (KBr): 1666 (C=O) cm^{-1}

MS : ESI: (M+H)⁺ = 482/484/486 (Cl₂)

The following were prepared accordingly:

- 97 -

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
N10	B2	C57	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	73	G	0.75	M ⁺ = 487/489 (Br); ESI: (M+Na) ⁺ = 510/512 (Br); (2M+Na) ⁺ = 997/999/1001 (Br)	3205 (NH); 1666, 1645 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N10	B2	C58	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	78	F	0.82	ESI: (M+Na) ⁺ = 588/590/592 (Br ₂)	1660 (C=O)	212-215
N94	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	66	H	0.65	M ⁺ = 736/738/740 (Br ₂)	3469, 3357 (NH, NH ₂); 1751, 1691, 1649 (C=O)	
N89	Boc	-	from N10-H and N-Boc-glycine, THF/DMF 1/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	76			M ⁺ = 388	3427.3, 3321.2 (NH, NH ₂); 1722.3, 1666.4, 1645.2 (C=O)	272-275
N88	Ph ₂ CH	-	from N10-H and 1-benzhydryl- azetidine-3- carboxylic acid; THF as solvent; DIEA as base	64			M ⁺ = 480	1664.5 (C=O)	hydrochloride: 164-165

Example A114-acetylaminobenzenebutanoic acid

Prepared analogously to Example 10, but using ethanol as solvent, from 4-aminobenzenebutanoic acid and acetic anhydride in a yield of 62 % of theoretical. Colourless crystals.

IR (KBr): 3342.4 (NH); 1714.6, 1643.4 (C=O) cm⁻¹

The following was obtained accordingly, but in the absence of a solvent and using p-toluenesulphonic acid as catalyst:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
H ₃ CO	B2	C41	Ac ₂ O/TsOH/130°C	38	M ⁺ = 405/407/409 (Br ₂)		colourless crystals

Example A123-[1'-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-[1.4']]bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-5-(phenylmethyl)-imidazolidin-2,4-dione

A mixture of 5.5 g (20.2 mmol) of 3-(4-piperidinyl)-5-(phenylmethyl)-imidazolidin-2,4-dione, 4.0 g (20.1 mmol) of 1-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-4-piperidinone, 8 ml (20 mmol) of titanium(IV)-isopropoxide and 100 ml of anhydrous ethanol was stirred for 1 hour at ambient temperature. Then 0.89 g (13.45 mmol) of 95% sodium cyanoborohydride was added, the mixture was adjusted to pH 5 by the dropwise addition of glacial acetic acid and stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The mixture was stirred into 200 ml of water and freed from the precipitate formed. The filtrate was evaporated down in vacuo until no more ethanol passed over, the aqueous phase remaining was made alkaline with sodium hydroxide and extracted exhaustively with dichloromethane. Conventional working up of the extracts yielded 5.0 g (54 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals.

IR (KBr): 1772, 1712 (C=O) cm^{-1}

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
N86	Boc	-	from N65-H and N-Boc-4-piperidinone	6		1682, 1632 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N78	CH_2Ph	-	from N10-H and N-benzyl-3-pyrrolidinone	33	$M^+ = 390$	3305 (NH); 1666 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N77	Boc	-	from N12-H and N-Boc-4-piperidinone	38	$M^+ = 426$	3435 (NH); 1684 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N82	Boc	-	from N22-H and N-Boc-4-piperidinone	86	$M^+ = 494$	1676, 1645 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N103	CH_2Ph	-	from o-nitrobenzylamine and 7-methyl-3-(phenylmethyl)-3,7-diazabicyclo[3.3.1]nonan-9-one	35	$M^+ = 380$	3417.7 (NH); 1668.3 (C=O); 1355.9 (NO_2)	pale yellow oil

Example A13N-(2-aminophenylmethyl)-N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine

A solution of 60.6 g (278 mmol) of di-tert.butyldicarbonate in 400 ml of dioxane was added dropwise, within two hours, to a mixture of 80.0 g (270.8 mmol) of N-(2-aminophenylmethyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine, 39.2 ml (280 mmol) of triethylamine, 500 ml of dioxane and 450 ml of water, while maintaining a reaction temperature of 5-10°C. The mixture was stirred for a further 3 hours while cooling externally with ice water, then for 60 hours at ambient temperature. The dioxane was distilled off *in vacuo*, and the aqueous residue was extracted exhaustively with a total of 1 l of ethyl acetate. The combined ethyl acetate extracts were washed once with 200 ml of water, twice with 250 ml of a saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and once with 200 ml of water, dried over sodium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation *in vacuo*. The brownish oil remaining was taken up in 150 ml of diisopropylether and when left to stand colourless crystals were precipitated after about 15 hours, which were then suction filtered and dried. Yield: 31.5 g (29 % of theoretical).

IR (KBr): 3438.8, 3363.7 (NH, NH₂); 1666.4, 1639.4 (C=O) cm⁻¹

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f
N96	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N97-CH ₂ Ph and Boc ₂ O	98	K	0.81
N94	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N95-CH ₂ Ph and Boc ₂ O	98		
N71	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N72-CH ₂ Ph and Boc ₂ O	11		

Example A144-dimethylamino-3-chloroacetophenone

A mixture of 9.45 g (0.05 mol) of 3,4-dichloroacetophenone, 6.2 ml (0.1 mol) of dimethylamine and 2 ml of DIEA was stirred for 20 hours in an autoclave and at a reaction temperature of 120°C. After cooling the reaction mixture was divided between dichloromethane and water, the organic phase was washed with saturated sodium chloride solution, dried over sodium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation. The residue remaining was purified by column chromatography on silica gel, eluting first with toluene, then with tert.butyl-methyl ether. The appropriate eluates were combined and after working up in the usual way yielded 5.6 g (57 % of theoretical) of the desired substance as a colourless oil.

IR (KBr): 1678 (C=O) cm^{-1}

MS : $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+ = 198/200$ (Cl); $(\text{M}+\text{Na})^+ = 220/222$ (Cl);
 $(2\text{M}+\text{Na})^+ = 417/419$ (Cl)

The following was obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
N116	Boc	-	from 1-(dimethylethoxy-carbonyl)-4-piperidineamine, 2-fluoro-5-nitroaniline and K_2CO_3 in DMSO / H_2O 4/1 v/v	100			reddish-brown oil
N4	CH_2Ph	-	from 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine, N-(dimethylethoxy-carbonyl)-2-fluoro-5-nitroaniline in DMSO / 100°C	82	$\text{M}^+ = 352$		yellow crystals

Example A151-(Diphenylmethyl)-3-[(2-nitrophenylmethyl)amino]-azetidine

A mixture of 45.0 g (0.189 mol) of 3-amino-1-(diphenylmethyl)-azetidine, 28.7 g (0.190 mol) of 2-nitrobenzaldehyde and 280 ml of methanol was stirred for 3 hours at ambient

- 101 -

temperature. Then 7.4 g (0.196 mol) of sodium borohydride were added followed, after a further 2 hours, by another 6.0 g of sodium borohydride and 300 ml of methanol and after a further 16 hours by 4.0 g of sodium borohydride, and the mixture was stirred for a further 4 hours at ambient temperature. The mixture was concentrated by evaporation in vacuo and the residue was treated with 200 ml dichloromethane and 200 ml of water. It was filtered, the methylene chloride phase was dried over sodium sulphate and freed from solvent. The residue was purified by chromatography on silica gel (30-60 μ m) using dichloromethane/EE/MeOH/cyclohexane/conc. ammonia (59/25/7.5/7.5/1 v/v/v/v/v) as eluant, then on silica gel using dichloromethane/EE (1/1 v/v) as eluant. After the appropriate fractions had been worked up, 20.0 g (28 % of theoretical) of the desired compound were obtained in the form of a pale yellow oil.

IR (KBr): 1342 (NO_2) cm^{-1}

MS : ESI: $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+ = 374$; $(\text{M}+\text{Na})^+ = 396$

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	MS	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
N97	CH_2Ph	-	from 2-nitrobenzaldehyde, 4-amino-1-benzylpiperidine and NaBH_4 / MeOH	91		pale yellow oil
N99	CH_2Ph	-	from 5-chloro-2-nitrobenzaldehyde, 4-amino-1-benzylpiperidine and NaBH_4 / MeOH	92		pale yellow oil
N101	CH_2Ph	-	from 5-hydroxy-2-nitrobenzaldehyde, 4-amino-1-benzylpiperidine and NaBH_4 / MeOH	81	$\text{M}^+ = 341$	182; pale yellow crystals
N102	CH_2Ph	-	from 2-nitrobenzaldehyde, 8-(phenylmethyl)-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1]oct-3-ylamine and NaBH_4 / MeOH	76	$\text{M}^+ = 351$; ESI: $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+ = 352$	pale yellow oil
N110	CH_2Ph	-	from 3-methyl-2-nitrobenzaldehyde, 4-amino-1-benzylpiperidine and NaBH_4 / MeOH	100		

Example A163-[(2-aminophenylmethyl)amino]-1-(diphenylmethyl)-azetidine

A solution of 20.0 g (0.5355 mol) of 1-(diphenylmethyl)-3-[(2-nitrophenylmethyl)amino]-azetidine in 200 ml of methanol was hydrogenated in the presence of 4 g of 5% rhodium/charcoal for 5 hours at ambient temperature. The catalyst was filtered off, the filtrate was concentrated by evaporation in vacuo. 17.7 g (96 % of theoretical) of a colourless, highly viscous oil were obtained, which was further processed without any additional purification.

$R_f = 0.75$ (dichloromethane/EE/MeOH/cyclohexane/conc. ammonia
59/25/7.5/7.5/1 v/v/v/v/v)

MS: $M^+ = 343$; ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 344$; $(M+Na)^+ = 366$

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R_f	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
N93	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N97-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	97	D	0.64		colourless oil
N104	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N102-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	68				colourless oil
N105	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N103-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	94				colourless oil
N107	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N99-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	95	D	0.74		colourless oil
N95	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N96-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	38	D	0.87		colourless crystals
N108	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N101-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	99	D	0.47	3338 (NH)	colourless crystals
H ₃ CO	B2	C61	from H ₃ CO-B2-C62, H ₂ , R-Ni, EE	95			3458.2, 3408.0, 3357.9 (NH ₂); 1732.0, 1706.9, 1658.7 (C=O)	117
N109	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N110-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	98	D	0.42		colourless oil
HO	B2	C10	from HO-B2-C7, H ₂ , Pt-C, MeOH	20			3475.5, 3377.2 (NH ₂); 1716.5, 1679.9 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N111	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N112-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 5% Rh-C, MeOH	99	D	0.31		

Example A173-{[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-carbonyl}-azetidine-hydrochloride

A solution of 2.07 g (4.0033 mmol) of 1-(diphenylmethyl)-3-{[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]carbonyl}-azetidine-hydrochloride in a mixture of 100 ml of methanol and 2 ml of water was hydrogenated at a temperature of 50°C and in the presence of 0.5 g of 10% palladium/charcoal until the uptake of hydrogen had ended. After removal of the catalyst and solvent 1.36 g (97 % of theoretical) of the desired compound were obtained in the form of a colourless, porous substance.

IR (KBr): 1652.9 (C=O) cm^{-1}

MS : $M^+ = 314$

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [°C]
N53	H	-	from N53-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	83	D	0.07		3433.1, 3323.2 (NH, NH ₂); 1681.8 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N58	H	-	from N58-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	88	D	0.32			colourless, amorphous
N59	H	-	from N59-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	83	D	0.18			colourless oil
N60	H	-	from N60-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH, presumably a mixture of geometric isomers	91					colourless oil
N61	H	-	from N61-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	66	D	0.24			crystals
N71	H	-	from N71-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	91	D	0.15			colourless crystals
N92	H	-	from N92-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	52	D	0.42	$M^+ = 499$	1687.6, 1660.6 (C=O)	colourless oil
N94	H	-	from N94-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	84					colourless, amorphous
N79	H	-	from N79-CHPh ₂ , H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH / 1N aq. HCl (10/1 v/v)	65	D	0.17	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 287	1662 (C=O)	
N76	H	-	from N76-CHPh ₂ , H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH / 1N aq. HCl (2/1 v/v)	20	D	0.22	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 204		

N5	H	-	from N4-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, AcOH	92				3375.2, 3236.4 (NH, NH ₂); 1678.0 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N16	H	-	from N16-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 20% Pd-C, MeOH	99					
N29	H	-	from N29-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	54				3246 (NH); 1658 (C=O)	> 260 (MeOH)
N78	H	-	from N78-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	71	M	0.35		3205 (NH); 1666 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N74	H	-	from N74-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	70	M	0.44	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 276; (M-H) ⁻ = 276; (2M+H) ⁺ = 551; (2M-H) ⁻ = 549	3323, 3222 (NH); 2852, 2833 (OCH ₃); 1658 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N91	H	-	from N91-CH ₂ Ph, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	96	D	0.18		1689.5 (C=O); 1367.4, 1155.3 (SO ₂ -N)	colourless, amorphous
-	H	C63	from PhCH ₂ -C63, H ₂ , 10% Pd-C, MeOH	93			ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 255		colourless oil

Example A186-chloro-3,4-dihydro-3-(4-piperidinyl)-2(1H)-quinazolinone

2.17 g (15.178 mmol) of 1-chloroethyl chlorocarbonate were added to a solution of 4.5 g (12.645 mmol) of 6-chloro-3,4-dihydro-3-[(1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl)-2(1H)-quinazolinone in 100 ml of anhydrous ethylene chloride and the mixture was refluxed for 1 hour. After the addition of 20 ml of methanol the mixture was refluxed for a further 3 hours. It was left to cool, 1.05 ml of 12M hydrochloric acid were added and the resulting mixture was evaporated down *in vacuo*. The residue was carefully triturated with petroleum ether and with diethylether one after the other. The crystals were taken up in a little water, the solution obtained was made clearly alkaline with sodium hydroxide solution and extracted exhaustively with EE. The combined ethyl acetate extracts were dried over potassium carbonate and brought to dryness *in vacuo*. The crystals remaining were triturated with diisopropylether and suction filtered. After drying in a circulating air dryer, 3.21 g (96 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained.

Example A19Methyl 4-(1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxobenzimidazol-5-yl)-4-oxobutanoate

A mixture of 20.0 g (0.09 mol) of methyl 4-(3,4-diaminophenyl)-4-oxobutanoate, 16.2 g (0.1 mol) of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole and 250 ml of tetrahydrofuran was heated to 60°C with stirring for 90 minutes. After cooling the mixture was stirred into 500 ml of ice water, the precipitate formed was suction filtered and washed with diethylether. After drying in vacuo 14.85 g (67% of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained.

IR (KBr): 1728.1, 1699.2, 1674.1 (C=O) cm^{-1}

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
N58	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N104-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	18			M ⁺ = 347	1664.5 (C=O)	
N59	CH ₂ Ph	-	mixture of diastereomers, partly separable; from N105-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	22			ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 377		colourless, amorphous
N69	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N69-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	46	D	0.84			colourless crystals (acetone)
N61	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N-[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidiny]-D,L-phenylglycinamide and CDI in DMF	93	D	0.6	M ⁺ = 363	3249.9 (NH); 1764.8, 1708.8 (C=O)	colourless crystals (diisopropylether)
N16	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N109-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	45				1662.5 (C=O)	
N29	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N108-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	50				1664 (C=O)	colourless crystals
N76	CHPh ₂	-	from N106-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	6				1669 (C=O)	colourless crystals (diisopropylether)
N76	CHPh ₂	-	from N106-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	32				3207 (NH); 1660 (C=O)	colourless crystals (diisopropylether)
N74	CH ₂ Ph	-	from N111-CH ₂ Ph and CDI in DMF	84	D	0.71			colourless crystals
N4	Boc	-	from N116-Boc and CDI in THF	6	D	0.57	M ⁺ = 362		pale yellow crystals

Example A20

N-[(2-aminocarbonylamino)phenyl)methyl]-N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine

2.0 g (0.03 mol) of sodium cyanate were added to a solution of 7.91 g (0.02 mol) of N-[(2-aminophenyl)methyl]-N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine in a mixture of 5.5 ml glacial acetic acid and 80 ml of water and the mixture was stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The mixture was made slightly alkaline by the addition of saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, then extracted exhaustively with EE. The combined ethyl acetate extracts were washed with water, dried over sodium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation *in vacuo*. 8.7 g (99 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained, R_f 0.71 (El D), which were further processed without any additional purification.

Example A21

N-{2-{[1.4']bipiperidinyl-1'-ylcarbonylamino}phenylmethyl}-N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidine-amine

A mixture of 2.56 g (15.6 mmol) of CDT, 5.14 g (13 mmol) of N-[(2-aminophenyl)methyl]-N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine and 200 ml of tetrahydrofuran was stirred for 0.5 hours while cooling with ice and then for 30 minutes at ambient temperature. 2.4 g (14.3 mmol) of [1,4']bipiperidinyl were added with stirring and the mixture was refluxed for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with 200 ml of ethyl acetate and the organic phase was washed twice with 150 ml of aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and once with 100 ml of saturated aqueous sodium

- 107 -

chloride solution. After the organic phase had been dried and the solvent eliminated in vacuo the residue was purified by column chromatography (MN-silica gel 60, Macherey-Nagel, 70-230 mesh ASTM, eluant: dichloromethane/isopropanol = 9/1 (v/v)). 5.0 g (65 % of theoretical) of a colourless amorphous product were obtained, R_f 0.5 (El D).

IR (KBr): 1687.6, 1660.6 cm^{-1} (C=O)

Example A22

2-amino-3-[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3,4-dihydro-quinazoline

A solution of 10.0 g (33.85 mmol) of N-[(2-aminophenyl)methyl]-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine in 150 ml of anhydrous ethanol was combined with 4.0 g (37.76 mmol) of bromocyanogen added batchwise. The mixture was left to stand overnight at ambient temperature, the ethanol was eliminated in vacuo and the residue was distributed between dichloromethane and 1N sodium hydroxide solution. After working up in the conventional way, 9.3 g (86 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained, R_f 0.4 (El D), which were further processed without any additional purification.

Example A23

N-[2-(5-methoxy-2-nitrophenyl)ethyl]-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine

34.0 ml (268.2 mmol) of trimethylsilyl chloride were slowly added dropwise to a solution of 27.0 g (70.4 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-nitro-N-[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-benzeneacetamide in 400 ml of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran and then stirred for another 1 hour at ambient temperature. 4.9 g (213.7 mmol) of lithium borohydride were added batchwise,

- 108 -

stirring was continued for another 30 minutes at ambient temperature and then for 4 hours at reflux temperature. After cooling, 25 ml of water and 25 ml of semiconcentrated hydrochloric acid were added dropwise one after the other and the mixture was refluxed for 90 minutes. It was left to stand overnight at ambient temperature, then cooled in an ice bath and the precipitate formed was suction filtered. The aqueous phase of the filtrate was made ammoniacal and extracted exhaustively with EE. The combined ethyl acetate extracts were dried with sodium sulphate, then combined with ethereal hydrogen chloride solution until the precipitation ended. The product precipitated was combined with the earlier precipitate, presumed to be the dihydrochloride of the desired compound, suspended in ethanol and suction filtered. The filter cake was dissolved in 100 ml of water, the solution was made ammoniacal and extracted exhaustively with EE. Conventional working up of the ethyl acetate extracts yielded a pale yellow oil, R_f 0.69 (El D). Yield: 11.3 g (43 % of theoretical).

IR (KBr): 1514, 1338 (NO_2) cm^{-1}

MS : ESI: $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+ = 370$

Example A24

5-methoxy-2-nitro-N-[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-benzene-acetamide

9.24 g (56.98 mmol) of N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole were added to a solution of 12.0 g (56.8 mmol) of 5-methoxy-2-nitrobenzene-acetic acid in 100 ml of tetrahydrofuran and the mixture was stirred for 40 minutes at a reaction temperature of 40°C. After the addition of 11.6 g (56.88 mmol) of 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine the mixture was heated to 40°C for another hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated by evaporation in

- 109 -

vacuo, the solid residue was digested with 50 ml of water and tert.butylmethylether, suction filtered and dried in a circulating air dryer at 50°C. 19.9 g (91 % of theoretical) of pale yellow crystals were obtained, R_f 0.6 (eluant: dichloromethane/EE/cyclohexane/methanol/conc. ammonia 300/80/25/25/3 v/v/v/v/v).

IR (KBr): 1638 (C=O) cm^{-1}

MS : ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 384$; $(M+Na)^+ = 406$; $(M-H)^- = 382$;
 $(M-H+HCl)^- = 418/420$ (Cl)

Example A25

4-(1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxo-1-benzimidazolyl)-1-{[2-[(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)amino]ethyl]piperidine}

A solution of 12.4 g (55.3 mmol) of 2-bromo-N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-ethylamine in 50 ml tetrahydrofuran was added dropwise to a solution of 12.0 g (55.2 mmol) of 4-(1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxo-1-benzimidazolyl)piperidine and 15.3 ml (110.4 mmol) of triethylamine in 300 ml tetrahydrofuran. The mixture was refluxed for 20 hours and, after cooling, the triethylamine hydrobromide precipitated was eliminated. The remaining solution was concentrated by evaporation in vacuo, the residue was dissolved in 1 l of EE, the solution was washed twice with 200 ml of water, dried over sodium sulphate and evaporated down again. 11.7 g (59 % of theoretical) of a colourless, waxy substance were obtained, which was used without any further purification.

IR (KBr): 3382.9 (NH); 1689.5 (C=O) cm^{-1}

Example A26

3-[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-1-(diphenylmethyl)-azetidine

- 110 -

A mixture of 19.7 g (0.0621 mol) of 1-(diphenylmethyl)-3-mesyloxyazetidine, 14.4 g (0.0623 mol) of 3,4-dihydro-3-(4-piperidinyl)-2(1H)-quinazolinone, 100 ml of dimethylformamide and 12 ml of triethylamine was heated to a reaction temperature of 90°C for 4 hours. The initially clear solution increasingly became a crystal slurry. After cooling the precipitate was suction filtered, crystallised once from 20 ml of hot dimethylformamide and the product was washed thoroughly with water and ethanol. After drying in a circulating air dryer 13.8 g (49 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained, R_f 0.76 (El D).

IR (KBr): 1662 (C=O) cm^{-1}

Example A27

N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-N-[(2-methanesulphonylamino-phenyl)-methyl]-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine

1.64 ml (21 mmol) of methanesulphonyl chloride was added dropwise to a solution of 7.91 g (20 mmol) of N-(1,1-dimethylethoxycarbonyl)-N-[(2-aminophenyl)methyl]-1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineamine and 3.0 ml (21 mmol) of triethylamine in 100 ml of tetrahydrofuran and the mixture was then kept for 12 hours at ambient temperature. It was then diluted with 100 ml of EE and extracted twice with 70 ml of saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution. The ethyl acetate phase was dried over sodium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation in vacuo. 8.7 g (92 % of theoretical) of a colourless substance were obtained, R_f 0.85 (El D), which were used in the next step without any further purification.

- 111 -

Example A284-(4-acetylaminophenyl)-2-methyl-4-oxobutanoic acid

22 ml (0.28 mol) of dimethylformamide were added dropwise to 133.34 g (1.0 mol) of finely powdered aluminium chloride within 20 minutes, while cooling externally with ice. After the strongly exothermic reaction died down, 13.517 g (0.1 mol) of acetanilide and 11.413 g (0.1 mol) of methylsuccinic acid anhydride were added all at once and at an initial temperature of 60°C, during which time the mixture heated up to about 80°C. It was kept for another 3 hours at a temperature of 60-70°C, the still hot mixture was stirred into 1 kg of crushed ice, 60 ml of conc. hydrochloric acid were added and the mixture was left to stand overnight at ambient temperature. The precipitate formed was suction filtered and thoroughly washed with water. It was taken up in 150 ml of methanol, stirred for 30 minutes at 50°C, then for another 30 minutes while cooling externally with ice and the precipitate was suction filtered. After drying in a circulating air dryer at 60°C, 10.4 g (42 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained, m.p. 229-231°C and R_f 0.48 (El I).
IR (KBr): 1714.6, 1662.5 cm^{-1} (C=O)

The following were obtained accordingly:

N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R_f	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [°C]
H ₃ CO	B2	C45	from octahydro-phenanthrene, 3-methoxycarbonyl-propionylchloride and AlCl ₃ / ethylene chloride	50				1730, 1675 (C=O)	75-77 (petrol)
HO	B17	C60	from acetanilide, glutaric acid anhydride and AlCl ₃ / DMF	12				3336.7 (NH); 1708.8, 1674.1 (C=O)	colourless crystals (MeOH)
H ₃ CCHCl	B7	C60	from acetanilide, 2-chloropropionylchloride and AlCl ₃ / CH ₂ Cl ₂	66	H	0.3	ESI: (M-H) ⁻ = 224/226 (Cl)	1670 (C=O)	

Example A29Ethyl 4-(4-acetylaminophenyl)-2-(ethoxycarbonyl)-3-methyl-4-oxobutanoate

24.407 ml (0.16 mol) of diethyl malonate were added dropwise to a suspension of 7.631 g (0.159 mol) of sodium hydride in 90 ml of anhydrous dimethylformamide under a nitrogen atmosphere, the mixture was heated for 90 minutes to 50°C, then 37.462 g (0.166 mol) of 1-(4-acetylaminophenyl)-2-chloro-1-propanone were added and heating was continued for a further 3 hours to 80°C. After cooling the mixture was stirred into 1 l of ice water, saturated with sodium chloride and extracted exhaustively with ethyl acetate. The combined ethyl acetate extracts were dried over sodium sulphate, filtered over activated charcoal and concentrated by evaporation in vacuo, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel. After working up in the usual way 45.0 g (80 % of theoretical) of a colourless oil were obtained, R_f 0.7 (El: EE).

IR (KBr): 1747, 1732, 1676 cm^{-1} (C=O)

MS : M^+ = 349

Example A301-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-2-methylamino-1-ethanone-hydrochloride

A solution of 10.2 g (0.027 mol) of 4-amino-3,5-dibromophenacyl bromide in 100 ml of dichloromethane was heated to 50°C for 4 hours in a vibrating autoclave and in the presence of 3.64 ml (0.062 mol) of methylamine. After cooling the mixture was extracted three times with 50 ml of water, the dichloromethane phase was dried over sodium sulphate, then diluted with 300 ml of diethylether, and ethereal hydrochloric

- 113 -

acid was added dropwise until the precipitation reaction had ended. The mixture was cooled overnight to -15°C , the precipitate was suction filtered and dried in a vacuum drying chamber at 40°C . Yield: 6.0 g (61 % of theoretical).

MS: $M^+ = 320/322/324$ (Br_2); ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 321/323/325$ (Br_2).

The product was used without purification, as the by-product detectable by mass spectroscopy (ESI: $(M_2+H)^+ = 609/611/613/615/617/619$ (Br_4)), presumably N,N'-bis-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenacyl)-methylaniline, was not expected to cause any complications in the subsequent reaction.

Example A31

2-amino-1-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1-ethanone-hydrochloride
7.5 g (53.8 mmol) of urotropine were added to a solution of 20.0 g (53.8 mmol) of 4-amino- α ,3,5-tribromoacetophenone in 600 ml of dichloromethane and stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The precipitate formed was suction filtered, washed with dichloromethane and dried in vacuo, then suspended in 600 ml ethanol. The mixture obtained was combined with 100 ml of conc. hydrochloric acid and refluxed for 2½ hours. After cooling the precipitate formed was suction filtered, carefully washed with cold ethanol and dried in vacuo. Yield of colourless crystals: 18.5 g (100 % of theoretical).
IR (KBr): 3477.5, 3431.2, 3323.2 (NH_2); 1679.9 (C=O) cm^{-1}

Example A32

1-(Diphenylmethyl)-3-(phthalimido)-azetidine

A mixture of 75 g (0.235 mol) of 1-(diphenylmethyl)-3-(methanesulphonyloxy)-azetidine, 47.1 g (0.254 mol) of potassium phthalimide and 800 ml of dimethylformamide was refluxed for 1½ hours, during which time a fine precipitate gradually settled out. After cooling the precipitate was

- 114 -

filtered off and the solvent was evaporated off *in vacuo*, finally under a high vacuum. The colourless residue crystallised when left to stand. Yield: 78.0 g (90 % of theoretical). $R_f = 0.95$ (El N).

Example A33

3-amino-1-(diphenylmethyl)-azetidine

572 ml of 40% aqueous methylamine solution and 300 ml of water were added successively to a suspension of 78.0 g (0.212 mol) of 1-(diphenylmethyl)-3-(phthalimido)-azetidine in 480 ml of ethanol. After 7 days' stirring at ambient temperature a clear solution had formed, which was freed from excess methylamine and ethanol *in vacuo*. The aqueous solution remaining was extracted exhaustively with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate extracts were dried over sodium sulphate and dried *in vacuo*. 45.0 g (89 % of theoretical) of a colourless oil were obtained, which was further processed without any additional purification.

Example A34

4-[4-(methylamino)-3-nitrophenyl]-4-oxobutanoic acid

A solution of 20.0 g (0.0776 mol) of 4-(4-chloro-3-nitrophenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid in 200 ml of 40% aqueous methylamine solution was stirred for 3 hours in a sealed vessel. Then the mixture was diluted with the same volume of water and acidified with acetic acid. The product precipitated was suction filtered, thoroughly washed with water and dried at 50°C in a circulating air dryer. 18.5 g (95 % of theoretical) of the desired compound were obtained in the form of yellow crystals.

- 115 -

Example A354-(4-chloro-3-nitrophenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid

While cooling externally with a mixture of ice and common salt, 21.3 g (0.1 mol) of 4-(4-chlorophenyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid were added batchwise to 100 ml of fuming nitric acid in such a way that the temperature of the mixture did not exceed 0°C. The mixture was stirred for another 1 hour at an internal temperature of between -5 and 0°C, then stirred into 1 l of ice water, after ½ hour the precipitate was collected on a filter, thoroughly washed with water until free from acid, and the crystalline product was dried in a circulating air dryer. 23.4 g (91 % of theoretical) of pale yellow crystals were obtained.

Example A36Methyl 4-(1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-4-oxobutanoate

75 ml of phosphorus(III)oxychloride were slowly added dropwise, while cooling externally with water, to a solution of 20.0 g (0.09 mol) of methyl 4-(3,4-diaminophenyl)-4-oxobutanoate in 50 ml of formic acid and the mixture was then stirred for another 40 minutes at a reaction temperature of 60°C. It was left to cool, then the mixture was stirred into 500 g of crushed ice while cooling externally with ice and made weakly ammoniacal. It was then extracted exhaustively with ethyl acetate, the combined extracts were dried over magnesium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation in vacuo. 8.29 g (40 % of theoretical) of a colourless, crystalline substance were obtained.

IR (KBr): 1732.0, 1679.9 cm⁻¹ (C=O)

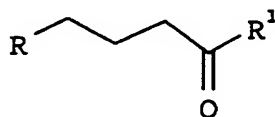
Example A371-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-4-[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidiny]-piperazine

To a solution of 27.8 g (0.15 mol) of 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinone and 26.5 g (0.15 mol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-piperazine in 500 ml of tetrahydrofuran were added 200 mg of p-toluenesulphonic acid and 13.5 g (0.225 mol) of glacial acetic acid, followed by 47.7 g (0.225 mol) of sodium triacetoxyborohydride, in small batches, and the mixture was stirred overnight at ambient temperature. 100 ml of water were added dropwise while stirring was continued and after 30 minutes sufficient potassium carbonate was added to produce a precipitate that could be filtered off. It was filtered and the filter cake was washed thoroughly with THF and diethylether in succession. The combined filtrates were concentrated by evaporation in vacuo, the residue was purified by column chromatography on 400 g of aluminium oxide (Al₂O₃-ICN, activity stage 3) using EE/MeOH (95/5 v/v) as eluant. A colourless oil, R_f 0.33 (El 0), was obtained in a yield of 35.0 g (68 % of theoretical).

MS: ESI: (M+H)⁺ = 345

B. Preparation of the final compoundsExample 1

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



- 117 -

1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone-hydrochloride
(Item no.1)

A mixture of 30.6 g (0.0861 mol) of 1-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-chloro-1-butanone, 18.6 g (0.0856 mol) of 1-(4-piperidinyl)-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone, 18.2 g (0.172 mol) of anhydrous sodium carbonate, 2.0 g of potassium iodide and 800 ml of methylisobutylketone was refluxed for 130 hours. After cooling the mixture was extracted once with 500 ml of water, the organic phase was dried over sodium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in 50 ml of anhydrous ethanol and the equivalent amount of ethanolic hydrogen chloride solution was added dropwise. After standing for 24 hours at ambient temperature the colourless crystals precipitated were suction filtered and dried in vacuo. Yield: 27.0 g (55 % of theoretical). M.p.: 297-299 C (decomp.) (ethanol/water 95/5 v/v). R_f 0.21 (El A).

$C_{22}H_{24}Br_2N_4O_2 \cdot HCl$ (572.73)

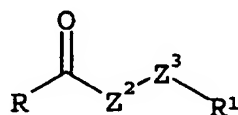
Calc.:	C 46.14	H 4.40	Br 27.90	Cl 6.19	N 9.78
Found:	45.10	4.92	27.65	6.09	9.95

The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	Ex. no.	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]
2	N2	B1	C1	1	DMF/DMSO 2/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	29	A	0.21	m/e = 244; 257; 276	1687.6 (C=O)
3	N3	B1	C1	1	DMSO as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	21	A	0.28	ESI:(M+H) ⁺ = 549/551/553 (Br ₂)	1695.3 (C=O)
4	N4	B1	C1	1	DMSO as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	48	A	0.53	m/e = 288 / 289	1685.7, 1712.7 (C=O); 1492.8, 1332.7 (NO ₂)
5	N5	B1	C1	1	DMF as solvent; Na ₂ CO ₃ as base	22	B	0.23		3442.7, 3364.5 (NH, NH ₂); 1683.8 (C=O)
10	N10	B1	C1	1	DMF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	3	B	0.5	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 549/551/553 (Br ₂)	1666.4 (C=O)
11	N11	B1	C1	1	acetone/MeCO ^t Bu as solvent; Na ₂ CO ₃ as base	30	B	0.24		1668.3 (C=O)
113	N42	B1	C1	1	DMF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	18	A	0.25	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 607/609/611 (Br ₂)	1703.0 (C=O)

Example 2

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone (Item no. 12)

A mixture of 1.0 g (2.849 mmol) of 4-amino-3,5-dibromo-γ-oxo-benzenebutanoic acid, 1.04 g (2.91 mmol) of 1,3-dihydro-1-(4-piperidinyl)-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone, 0.935 g (2.912 mmol) of TBTU, 1.02 ml (5.77 mmol) of DIEA and 50 ml of tetrahydrofuran was stirred for 1 hour at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with 300 ml of water and acidified slightly with citric acid. The precipitate formed was suction filtered and washed carefully with water, then with 3 ml of tetrahydrofuran, and finally dried in a

circulating air dryer at a temperature of 60°C. 1.3 g (79 % of theoretical) of a colourless, crystalline product were obtained, R_f 0.47 (El A).

IR (KBr): 1679.9 cm^{-1} (C=O)

MS : $M^+ = 574/576/578$ (Br_2)

The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	El	R_f	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]	m.p. [$^{\circ}\text{C}$]
13	N13	B2	C1	THF/DMF 1/1 as solvent	25	A	0.47	ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 564/566/568$ (Br_2); $(M+Na)^+ = 586/588/590$ (Br_2)	1670.3 (C=O)	> 225
14	N14	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; NEt_3 as base	73	A	0.48	$M^+ = 576/578/580$ (Br_2)	1697.3 (C=O)	
15	N15	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	67	A	0.48	$M^+ = 588/590/592$ (Br_2)	1678.0, 1647.1 (C=O)	
16	N16	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	47	A	0.58		1656.8 (C=O)	
17	N16	B2	C2	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	19	A	0.63	$M^+ = 540/542$ (Br)	1670.3 (C=O)	
18	N10	B2	C2	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	69	A	0.43	$M^+ = 526/528$ (Br)	1701.1, 1687.6, 1664.5 (C=O)	243 (MeOH)
19	N1	B2	C2	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	61	A	0.39	$M^+ = 512/514$ (Br)	1685.7 (C=O)	128
21	N12	B2	C2	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	78	B	0.70			243 (MeOH)
25	N10	B2	C4	DMF as solvent; NEt_3 as base	47	B	0.79	$M^+ = 421$	1674, 1657 (C=O)	171-172 (MeOH)
26	N10	B2	C5	DMF as solvent; NEt_3 as base	68	A	0.40	$M^+ = 425/427$ (Cl)	1689.5, 1662.5, 1654.8 (C=O)	237-238 (MeOH)
27	N10	B2	C6	DMF as solvent; NEt_3 as base	85	A	0.25	$M^+ = 465$	1666.4 (C=O)	258-259 (decomp.)
28	N10	B2	C7	DMF as solvent; NEt_3 as base	54	A	0.33	$M^+ = 470/472$ (Cl)	1689.5, 1668.3, 1631.7 (C=O)	207-209

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
29	N17	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	81	A	0.30	M ⁺ = 622/624/626 (Br ₂)	1654.8 (C=O)	256-258 (acetonitrile)
30	N10	B2	C8	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	59	B	0.53		1652.9, 1633.6 (C=O)	colourless crystals
31	N10	B2	C9	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	88	B	0.71	M ⁺ = 447	1703.0, 1670.3 (C=O)	colourless crystals
32	N18	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	61	A	0.38	M ⁺ = 548/550/552 (Br ₂)	1656.8 (C=O)	colourless crystals
33	N19	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	85	A	0.48	M ⁺ = 592/594/596 (Br ₂)	1664.5 (C=O)	colourless crystals
34	N20	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	83	A	0.50	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 597/599/601 (Br ₂ Cl); (M+Na) ⁺ = 619/621/623/625 (Br ₂ Cl)	1664.5 (C=O)	colourless crystals
35	N10	B2	C10	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	10	A	0.34	M ⁺ = 440/442 (Cl)	1668.3, 1647.1 (C=O)	
36	N21	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	85	A	0.45	M ⁺ = 568/570/572 (Br ₂)	1652.9 (C=O)	colourless crystals
37	N22	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	37	A	0.25	M ⁺ = 642/644/646 (Br ₂)	1685.7 (C=O)	colourless crystals
38	N23	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	6	A	0.18	M ⁺ = 580/582/584 (Br ₂)	1683.8 (C=O)	
39	N24	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	43	A	0.48	M ⁺ = 575/577/579 (Br ₂)	1685.7 (C=O)	
40	N25	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	26	A	0.52		1658.7 (C=O)	
41	N26	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	15	A	0.47	M ⁺ = 642/644/646 (Br ₂)		
42	N27	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	72	A	0.57	M ⁺ = 563/565/567 (Br ₂)	1668 (C=O)	> 250
43	N28	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	53	A	0.48	M ⁺ = 563/565/567 (Br ₂)	1662 (C=O)	> 250
44	N29	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	72	A	0.46	M ⁺ = 578/580/582 (Br ₂)	1651 (C=O)	colourless crystals
45	N10	B3	C11	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	57	A	0.70	M ⁺ = 467/469 (Br)	1664 (C=O)	colourless crystals

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
46	N10	B3	C12	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	77	A	0.68	M ⁺ = 417	1662 (C=O)	colourless crystals
47	N10	B3	C13	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	80	A	0.60	M ⁺ = 405	1655 (C=O)	colourless crystals
48	N10	B3	C14	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	52	A	0.63	M ⁺ = 439		colourless crystals
49	N10	B3	C15	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	50	A	0.72	M ⁺ = 445		colourless crystals
50	N10	B3	C16	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	53	A	0.65	M ⁺ = 457/459/461 (Cl ₂)	1666 (C=O)	colourless crystals
51	N10	B3	C17	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	65	A	0.57	M ⁺ = 434	1668 (C=O)	colourless crystals
52	N10	B3	C18	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	34	A	0.66	M ⁺ = 403	1660 (C=O)	colourless crystals
53	N10	B3	C19	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	59	A	0.73	M ⁺ = 471	1668, 1630 (C=O)	colourless crystals
54	N10	B3	C20	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	46	A	0.77	M ⁺ = 517	1657 (C=O)	colourless crystals
55	N10	B3	C21	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	59	A	0.70	ESI: (M+Na) ⁺ = 460/462 (Cl); (2M+Na) ⁺ = 897/899/901 (2 Cl)	1664, 1639 (C=O)	colourless crystals
56	N10	B3	C22	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	8	A	0.72	M ⁺ = 512/514 (Br)	1664 (C=O)	
57	N10	B3	C23	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	4	A	0.68			
59	N30	B2	C1	THF/DMF 3/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	93	A	0.59	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 561/563/565 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 583/585/587 (Br ₂)		272-274 (decomp.)
60	N10	B5	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	46	A	0.53	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 549/551/553 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 571/573/575 (Br ₂)	1668.3 (C=O)	
61	N31	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	94	A	0.88	M ⁺ = 561/563/565 (Br ₂)	1668.3, 1652.9 (C=O)	246-252
62	N10	B2	C24	THF/DMF 1/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	58	A	0.46	M ⁺ = 467	1678.0, 1658.7 (C=O)	decomp. from about 200

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
63	N32	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	42	A	0.20		1670.3, 1645.2 (C=O)	207 (decomp.)
64	N12	B5	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	31	A	0.24	M ⁺ = 560/562/564 (Br ₂)	1679.9 (C=O)	162.5-163.5 (diisopropyl-ether)
65	N10	B2	C25	THF/DMF 1/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	65	A	0.54	M ⁺ = 547/549/551 (Br ₂)	1666.4 (C=O)	212-214 (EtOH / active charcoal)
66	N10	B2	C26	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	52	A	0.39	M ⁺ = 421	1668.3 (C=O)	174-175 (AcOEt)
67	N10	B2	C27	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	18	A	0.38	M ⁺ = 409	1668.3 (C=O)	164-166 (diisopropyl-ether)
68	N1	B5	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	46	A	0.60	M ⁺ = 534/536/538 (Br ₂)	1703.0 (C=O)	172-173 (diisopropyl-ether)
69	N33	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	65	A	0.76	M ⁺ = 562/564/566 (Br ₂)	1691.5 (C=O)	225-226 (94% EtOH)
70	N10	B5	C2	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	39	A	0.23	M ⁺ = 512/514 (Br)	1666.4 (C=O)	94-98 (diisopropyl-ether)
71	N10	B5	C3	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	76	A	0.48	M ⁺ = 470/472 (Br)	1668.3 (C=O)	181-183 (diisopropyl-ether)
72	N10	B3	C28	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	26	A	0.55		2229.6 (CN); 1668.3 (C=O)	191-193 (EtOH)
74	N10	B6	C29	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	40	A	0.48	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 466; (M+Na) ⁺ = 488	2221.9 (CN); 1635.5 (CON)	148-151
75	N10	B3	C29	by-product of synthesis of Item no. (74)	4	A	0.60	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 448; (M+Na) ⁺ = 470	1666.4 (C=O)	colourless crystals
76	N10	B2	C29	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	49	A	0.44	M ⁺ = 449	2221.9 (CN); 1664.5 (C=O); 1637.5 (CON)	
78	N1	B2	C29	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	47	A	0.14	M ⁺ = 461	1658.7 (C=O)	
79	N34	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	87	A	0.87	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 613/615/617 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 635/637/639 (Br ₂)	1706.9 (C=O)	colourless crystals

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
81	N35	B2	C1	by-product of synthesis of Item no. (80)	15	A	0.37	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 433/435/437 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 455/457/459 (Br ₂); (M-H) ⁻ = 431/433/435 (Br ₂)	1651 (amide-C=O)	
83	N10	B3	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	9	A	0.50	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 561/563/565 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 583/585/587 (Br ₂); (2M+Na) ⁺ = 1144/1146/1148/1150 (Br ₄); (M+NH ₄) ⁺ = 578/580/582 (Br ₂)	1662.5 (C=O)	
84	N12	B3	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	9	A	0.22	M ⁺ = 572/574/576 (Br ₂)	1683.8 (C=O)	
85	N36	B3	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	17	A	0.72	M ⁺ = 346/348/350 (Br ₂)	1674.1 (C=O)	
86	N30	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	12	A	0.42	(M+Na) ⁺ = 582/584/586 (Br ₂)	1651.0 (C=O)	colourless crystals
87	N37	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	18	A	0.64	M ⁺ = 561/563/565 (Br ₂)	1676.0 (C=O)	colourless crystals
100	N76	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	40	A	0.33	M ⁺ = 534/536/538 (Br ₂)	1669 (C=O)	colourless crystals
101	N41	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	38	A	0.22	M ⁺ = 745/747/749/751/753 (Br ₄)	1680 (C=O)	colourless crystals
102	N10	B2	C32	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	77	A	0.25	M ⁺ = 439	1666 (C=O)	169-170 (MeOH)
103	N10	B2	C33	THF/DMF 4/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	42	A	0.50	M ⁺ = 561/563/565 (Br ₂)	1662 (C=O)	colourless crystals
104	N10	B3	C34	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	38	A	0.48	M ⁺ = 466/468 (Cl)	1666, 1657 (C=O)	
115	N1	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	87	A	0.48	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 549/551/553 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 571/573/575 (Br ₂)	3450.4, 3325.1 (NH, NH ₂); 1662.5 (C=O)	
116	N10	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	77	A	0.52	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 563/565/567 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 585/587/589 (Br ₂)	3448.5, 3325.1, 3207.4 (NH, NH ₂); 1662.5 (C=O)	

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
117	N44	B2	C1	THF/DMF 1/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	27	A	0.10	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 567/569/571 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 589/591/593 (Br ₂); (M-H) ⁻ = 567/569/571 (Br ₂)	1679.9 (C=O)	
118	N45	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	73	A	0.58	M ⁺ = 620/622/624 (Br ₂)	1722.3, 1670.3 (C=O)	
120	N47	B2	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	75	A	0.32	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 566/568/570 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 588/590/592 (Br ₂)	3471.7, 3367.5 (NH, NH ₂); 1664.5, 1631.7 (C=O)	
125	N52	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	36	A	0.87	M ⁺ = 600/602/604 (Br ₂)	1652.9 (C=O)	
127	N1	B12	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	71	A	0.32	M ⁺ = 563/565/567 (Br ₂)	1701, 1674, 1624 (C=O)	
128	N10	B12	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	81	A	0.25	M ⁺ = 577/579/581 (Br ₂)	1653, 1635 (C=O)	
129	N1	B13	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	29	A	0.48	M ⁺ = 549/551/553 (Br ₂)	1697, 1632 (C=O)	
130	N10	B13	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	27	A	0.48		1655 (C=O)	
131	N12	B13	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	26	A	0.20	M ⁺ = 575/577/579 (Br ₂)	1674 (C=O)	
132	N53	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	20	A	0.66	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 680/682/684 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 702/704/706 (Br ₂)	1689.5 (C=O)	
133	N10	B2	C41	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	65	A	0.25	M ⁺ = 604/606/608 (Br ₂)	1697.3, 1639.4 (C=O)	
136	N12	B12	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	10	A	0.10	M ⁺ = 589/591/593 (Br ₂)	1678 (C=O)	
137	N1	B14	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	88	A	0.25	M ⁺ = 563/565/567 (Br ₂)	1703 (C=O)	
138	N10	B14	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	69	A	0.20	M ⁺ = 577/579/581 (Br ₂)	1662 (C=O)	
139	N56	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	33	A	0.08	M ⁺ = 568/570/572 (Br ₂)	3456.2 (NH, NH ₂); 1671.1, 1651.0 (C=O)	
143	N1	B2	C42	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	86	A	0.44	M ⁺ = 427	1689.5 (C=O)	
144	N10	B2	C42	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	84	A	0.47	M ⁺ = 441	1668.3 (C=O)	

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
145	N1	B2	C14	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	81	A	0.45	M ⁺ = 427	1695.3, 1641.3 (C=O)	
146	N10	B2	C14	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	52	A	0.52	M ⁺ = 441	1666.4 (C=O)	
147	N10	B15	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	73	A	0.63	M ⁺ = 576/578/580 (Br ₂)	3485.2 (NH, NH ₂); 1670.3 (C=O)	
149	N58	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	57	A	0.72	M ⁺ = 588/590/592 (Br ₂)	1670.3 (C=O)	
150	N59	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	53	B	0.20	(M+H) ⁺ = 618/620/622 (Br ₂)	1674.1 (C=O)	
151	N60	B2	C1	by-product of synthesis of Item no. (150)	12	A	0.11	M ⁺ = 617/619/621 (Br ₂)	1672.2 (C=O)	
152	N61	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	62	A	0.70	M ⁺ = 604/606/606 (Br ₂)	1705 (C=O)	
153	N62	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	63	A	0.76	M ⁺ = 590/592/594 (Br ₂)	1712.7, 1674.1 (C=O)	
154	N63	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	70	A	0.89	M ⁺ = 598/600/602 (Br ₂)	1672.2 (C=O)	
155	N64	B2	C1	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	71	A	0.21	M ⁺ = 592/594/592 (Br ₂)	1680, 1647 (C=O)	
157	N65	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	90	A	0.30	M ⁺ = 624/626/628 (Br ₂)	1683.8 (C=O)	
158	N66	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	64			M ⁺ = 650/652/654 (Br ₂)	1674.1 (C=O)	
159	N67	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	77	A	0.20	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 605/607/609 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 627/629/631 (Br ₂)	1682 (C=O)	
160	N68	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	80	A	0.30		1684 (C=O)	
161	N69	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	98	A	0.55	M ⁺ = 596/598/600 (Br ₂ Cl)	1670 (C=O)	
164	N70	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	20	A	0.35	M ⁺ = 599/601/603 (Br ₂)	1695, 1678 (C=O)	
165	N10	B2	C45	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	71	A	0.64	M ⁺ = 499	1658 (C=O)	
168	N10	B3	C24	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	37	A	0.68	M ⁺ = 465	1658 (C=O)	

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
169	N10	B3	C46	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	61	A	0.65	M ⁺ = 461	3473 (NH, NH ₂); 1705, 1658 (C=O)	
170	N10	B3	C47	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	52	A	0.43	M ⁺ = 479	1668 (C=O)	
171	N10	B3	C48	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	60	A	0.62	M ⁺ = 473	1658 (C=O)	
172	N10	B3	C49	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	32	A	0.65	M ⁺ = 417	1660 (C=O)	
173	N10	B3	C50	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	33	A	0.58	M ⁺ = 419	1658 (C=O)	
174	N10	B3	C51	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	38	A	0.59	M ⁺ = 447	1671, 1658 (C=O)	
175	N10	B3	C52	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	64	A	0.43	M ⁺ = 437	1664 (C=O)	
176	N10	B3	C53	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	23	A	0.54	M ⁺ = 472	1666 (C=O)	
177	N10	B3	C54	THF as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	14	A	0.61	M ⁺ = 433	1658 (C=O)	
178	N10	B3	C55	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	10	A	0.71	M ⁺ = 457		
180	N10	B17	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	55	A	0.50	M ⁺ = 576/578/580 (Br ₂)	3471, 3352 (NH, NH ₂); 1664 (C=O)	
181	N71	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	60	A	0.94	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 662/664/666 (Br ₂)	1674, 1637 (C=O)	
185	N10	B18	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	48	A	0.66	M ⁺ = 576/578/580 (Br ₂)	1662 (C=O)	
186	N74	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	90	A	0.51	ESI: (M-H) ⁻ = 606/608/610 (Br ₂)	1660 (C=O)	
187	N75	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	95	A	0.60	ESI: (M-H) ⁻ = 575/577/579 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 599/601/603 (Br ₂); M ⁺ = 576/578/580 (Br ₂)	1658 (C=O)	
188	N91	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	19			ESI: (M+Na) ⁺ = 737/739/741 (Br ₂)	1681.8, 1645.2 (C=O)	

- 127 -

Item no.	N	B	C	Remarks	% yield	El	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
189	N92	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	45			ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 831/833/835 (Br ₂)	3458.2, 3381.0, 3338.6 (NH, NH ₂); 1652.9 (C=O)	

Example 3

4-amino-3,5-dibromo-N-{2-[4-(1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxo-1-benzimidazolyl)-1-piperidinyl]ethyl}-benzamide (Item no. 58)

A mixture of 0.279 g (1.0 mmol) of 4-amino-3,5-dibromobenzoic acid, 0.489 g (1.0 mmol) of 1-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone, 0.321 g (1.0 mmol) of TBTU, 2 ml of triethylamine and 50 ml DMF was stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with 300 ml of water. The precipitate formed was purified by column chromatography (MN-silica gel 60, Macherey-Nagel, 70-230 mesh ASTM, eluant: ethyl acetate/methanol = 95/5/ (v/v/)). After the appropriate eluates had been worked up, 200 mg (37 % of theoretical) of a colourless crystalline product were obtained, m.p. 228-229°C and R_f 0.12 (El A).

IR (KBr): 3468, 3364, 3318 (NH, NH₂); 1697 cm⁻¹ (C=O)

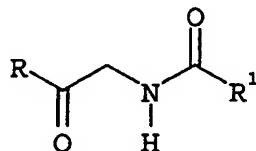
The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
80	N77	B2	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	23	B	0.23	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 646/648/650 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 668/670/672 (Br ₂)	1668.3 (C=O)	
82	N77	B7	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	25	B	0.37	M ⁺ = 589/591/593 (Br ₂)	1670.3 (C=O)	
88	N88	B7	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	47	A	0.17	M ⁺ = 589/591/593 (Br ₂)	1664.5, 1645.2 (C=O)	
89	N88	B7	C31	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	23	A	0.13	ESI: (M-H) ⁻ = 589/591/593 (Br ₂)	1652.9 (C=O)	colourless crystals
90	N80	B7	C1	by-product of synthesis of Item no. 82	10	B	0.46	M ⁺ = 603/605/607 (Br ₂)	1710.6, 1660.4 (C=O)	
91	N81	B7	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	8	B	0.37	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 602/604/606 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 624/626/628 (Br ₂)	1678 (C=O)	
92	N77	B7	C31	by-product of synthesis of Item no. 93	5	B	0.28	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 591/593/595 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 613/615/617 (Br ₂)	1672 (C=O)	
93	N80	B7	C31	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	2	B	0.37	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 605/607/609 (Br ₂); (M-H) ⁻ = 603/605/607 (Br ₂)		
94	N81	B7	C31	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	12	B	0.29	M ⁺ = 602/604/606 (Br ₂); ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 603/605/607 (Br ₂); (M-H) ⁻ = 601/603/605 (Br ₂)	1682 (C=O)	
95	N82	B7	C1	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	15	B	0.44	M ⁺ = 669/671/673 (Br ₂)	3483, 3386 (NH, NH ₂); 1689 (C=O)	
96	N83	B7	C1	by-product of synthesis of Item no. 95	8	A	0.19	M ⁺ = 685/687/689 (Br ₂)	1714 (C=O)	
97	N84	B7	C1	by-product of synthesis of Item no. 95	3	A	0.14	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 674/676/678 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 696/698/700 (Br ₂)	3481, 3375 (NH, NH ₂); 1693 (C=O)	

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
98	N82	B7	C31	DMF as solvent; DIEA as base	15	B	0.34	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 671/673/675 (Br ₂); (M-H) ⁻ = 669/671/673 (Br ₂)	1684 (C=O)	
99	N79	B7	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	44	A	0.28	M ⁺ = 561/563/565 (Br ₂)	1639 (C=O)	149-151 (decomp.) (AcOEt)
142	N87	B7	C43	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	37	A	0.12	M ⁺ = 482/484 (Cl)	1689, 1634 (C=O)	
156	N89	B7	C44	THF/DMF 1/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	58	A	0.43	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 552; (M+Na) ⁺ = 574	3332.8 (NH, NH ₂); 1660.8 (C=O)	
162	N85	B7	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	32	A	0.12	M ⁺ = 631/633/635 (Br ₂)	3440 (NH, NH ₂); 1707 (C=O)	colourless crystals
163	N86	B7	C1	THF/DMF 3/1 as solvent; DIEA as base	25	B	0.44	M ⁺ = 651/653/655 (Br ₂)	3464, 3373 (NH, NH ₂); 1685 (C=O)	
166	N78	B7	C1	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	32	A	0.19	M ⁺ = 575/577/579 (Br ₂)	3411, 3319 (NH, NH ₂); 1657 (C=O)	
167	N78	B7	C16	THF as solvent; DIEA as base	58	A	0.13	M ⁺ = 472/474/476 (Cl ₂)	1664 (C=O)	

Example 4

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



N-{2-[4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-1-piperidinyl]-2-oxoethyl}-2-naphthalenecarboxamide (Item no. 140)

A mixture of 0.5 g (1.243 mmol) of 3-[1-(2-amino-1-oxoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone-trifluoroacetate, 0.33 g (1.731 mmol) of 2-naphthoyl chloride, 0.5 ml of triethylamine and 100 ml acetonitrile was stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The colourless crystals precipitated were suction filtered, thoroughly washed with

- 130 -

water and dried in vacuo. Yield: 0.47 g (85 % of theoretical).
 R_f 0.34 (El A).

IR (KBr): 3386.8 (NH, NH₂); 1670.3, 1633.6 (C=O)

MS : M^+ = 442

The following was prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R_f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]
141	N89	B7	C14	acetonitrile as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	46	A	0.34	M^+ = 442	1654.8 (C=O)

Example 5

(E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(4-carboxyphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 179)

A solution of 0.24 g (10.0 mmol) of lithium hydroxide in 20 ml of water was added to a solution of 1.2 g (2.6 mmol) of (E)-3,4-dihydro-3-{1-[1,4-dioxo-4-(4-ethoxycarbonylphenyl)-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 169) in 20 ml of THF. After stirring for 4 hours at ambient temperature the mixture was diluted with 200 ml of water and extracted once with 100 ml of tert.butylmethylether. The aqueous phase was acidified with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted five times with a mixture of dichloromethane and methanol (9/1 v/v). The combined organic extracts were dried over sodium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation in vacuo. The residue remaining was triturated with diethylether and suction filtered. After drying in a circulating air dryer 0.5 g (44 % of theoretical) of colourless crystals were obtained.
 R_f 0.72 (EE/MeOH/AcOH 80/20/5 v/v/v) or 0.43 (El D).

IR (KBr): 1689 (C=O)

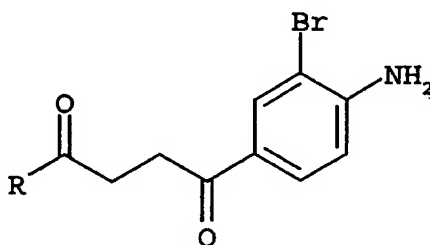
MS : no M^+

The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]
114	N43	B1	C1	saponification of the methyl ester Item no. 113 with LiOH/NaOH 1/20 in water/MeOH 1/1 (v/v)	58	D	0.13	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 593/595/597 (Br ₂); (M+Na) ⁺ = 615/617/619 (Br ₂)	1693.4 (C=O)
119	N46	B2	C1	saponification of the methyl ester Item no. 118 with NaOH in water/MeOH 3/1 (v/v)	76	A	0.08	M ⁺ = 606/608/610 (Br ₂)	3417.7, 3328.9 (NH, NH ₂); 1664.5, 1649.0 (C=O)

Example 6

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3-bromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 22)

A mixture of 1.5 g (2.84 mmol) of 3-{1-[4-(4-acetylamino-3-bromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone and 150 ml of conc. hydrochloric acid was refluxed for 1 hour. The residue was digested with water, the solid precipitated was suction filtered, recrystallised from acetonitrile and dried in vacuo. Yield: 0.88 g (64 % of theoretical). R_f 0.34 (El A).

IR (KBr): 3471.7, 3342.4 (NH, NH₂); 1666.4 (C=O)

MS : M⁺ = 484/486 (Br)

The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	Ex. no.	Remarks	% yield	El	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
20	N1	B2	C3	6	prepared from Item no. (19)	62	A	0.34	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 471/473 (Br); (M+Na) ⁺ = 493/495 (Br)		
23	N16	B2	C3	6	prepared from Item no. (17)	81	A	0.35	M ⁺ = 498/500 (Br)	1663 (C=O)	
24	N12	B2	C3	6	prepared from Item no. (21)	60	B	0.77	M ⁺ = 496/498 (Br)	1679.9 (C=O)	267 (MeOH)

Example 7

1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-N-[(2-aminocarbonylaminophenyl)methyl]-4-piperidineamine (Item no. 134)

2 ml of trifluoroacetic acid were added to a mixture of 0.20 g (0.2935 mmol) of 1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-N-dimethylethoxycarbonyl-N-[(2-aminocarbonylaminophenyl)methyl]-4-piperidineamine (Item no. 132) in 20 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours at ambient temperature and then evaporated down in vacuo. The residue remaining was triturated with ether and the beige-coloured amorphous solid obtained (0.15 g; 74 % of theoretical) was suction filtered.

IR (KBr): 1678.0 (C=O) cm⁻¹

R_f: 0.20 (El B)

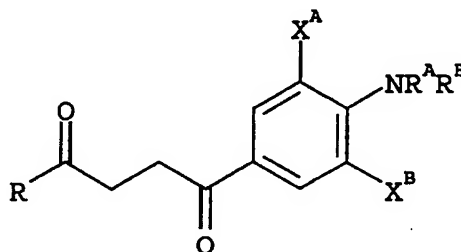
ESI-MS: (M+H)⁺ = 580/582/584 (Br₂)

The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]
135	N55	B2	C1	prepared from Item no. (188)	55	A	0.32	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 615/617/619 (Br ₂)	1674.1 (C=O)
148	N57	B2	C1	prepared from Item no. (189)	66	D	0.76	ESI: (M+H) ⁺ = 731/733/735 (Br ₂); (M+2H) ⁺⁺ = 366/367/368 (Br ₂)	1676.0 (C=O)
182	N72	B2	C1	prepared from Item no. (181)	100	D	0.33	M ⁺ = 561/563/565 (Br ₂)	3448 (NH, NH ₂); 1674, 1646 (C=O)

Example 8

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



3-{1-[4-[3-chloro-4-[4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl]-phenyl]-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 106)

A mixture of 921 mg (2.00 mmol) of 3-{1-[4-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone, 377 mg (2.2 mmol) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-piperazine, 10 ml of DMSO and 0.276 g (2.00 mmol) of potassium carbonate was stirred for 24 hours at a reaction temperature of 85°C. The mixture was diluted with 200 ml of water, then extracted exhaustively with EE. The combined extracts were dried over sodium sulphate and concentrated by evaporation in vacuo. The residue remaining was purified twice by column chromatography on silica gel (Amicon, 35-70 μm) (dichloromethane/methanol/conc. ammonia 70/30/1 v/v/v as eluant). The appropriate eluates were combined and after

- 134 -

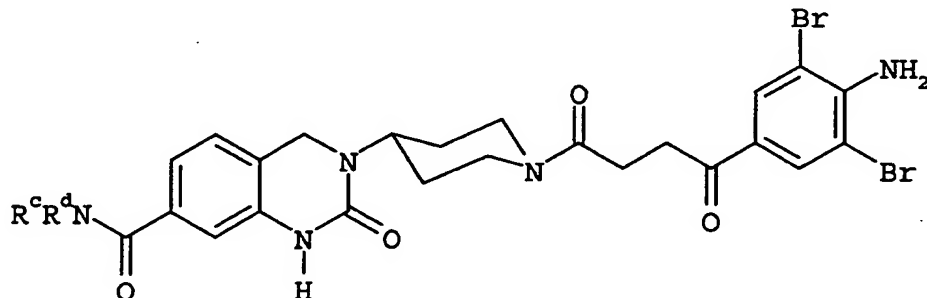
working up in the usual way yielded 30.0 mg (2.5 % of theoretical) of the desired substance as a colourless, amorphous substance. R_f 0.68 (El D) or 0.35 (eluant: dichloromethane/methanol/conc. ammonia 50/50/1 v/v/v).
 MS : $M^+ = 594/596$ (Cl); ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 595/597$ (Cl)

The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R_f	MS	IR [cm^{-1}]
107	N10	B2	C36	exchange of F in the p position for acyl	13	C	0.26	ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 636/638$ (Br)	1668 (C=O)
108	N10	B2	C37	exchange of F in the p position for acyl	15	D	0.72	ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 651/653$ (Br)	1668 (C=O)
109	N10	B2	C38	exchange of F in the p position for acyl	27	D	0.65	ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 639/641$ (Br)	1668 (C=O)
111	N10	B2	C39	exchange of F in the p position for acyl	1.4	C	0.18	$M^+ = 728/730/732$ (Br ₂); ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 729/731/733$ (Br ₂)	
112	N10	B2	C40	exchange of F in the p position for acyl	3.0	D	0.78	ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 800/802/804$ (Br ₂)	

Example 9

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-7-carboxamide
 (Item no. 121)

- 135 -

Prepared analogously to Example 2 from 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazoline-7-carboxylic acid (Item no. 119), ammonium carbonate and TBTU in the presence of THF/DMF (5/1 v/v) and triethylamine in a quantitative yield.

IR (KBr): 3415.7 (NH, NH₂); 1652.9 (C=O)

MS : M⁺ = 605/607/609 (Br₂)

The following were prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]
122	N49	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	88	D	53	M ⁺ = 688/690/692 (Br ₂)	1633.6 (C=O)
123	N50	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	85	A	0.15	M ⁺ = 675/677/679 (Br ₂)	1672.2, 1635.5 (C=O)
124	N51	B2	C1	THF/DMF 5/1 as solvent; NEt ₃ as base	82	B	0.50	M ⁺ = 649/651/653 (Br ₂)	1662.5 (C=O)

Example 10

5-acetylamino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone (Item no. 6) and 3-acetyl-5-acetylamino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone (Item no. 7)

73.5 mg (0.72 mmol) of acetic anhydride were added to a solution of 200 mg (0.363 mmol) of 5-amino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone in 20 ml of THF at a reaction temperature of 0°C and then stirred for 2 hours at ambient temperature, followed by 1 hour at an internal temperature of 50°C. The mixture was evaporated down in vacuo, the residue was resolved by column chromatography on silica gel (30-60 μm) using dichloromethane/methanol/cyclohexane/conc. ammonia

- 136 -

400/40/40/2.5 v/v/v/v as eluant. By working up the appropriate fractions, 39 mg (17 % of theoretical) of 3-acetyl-5-acetylamino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone (Item no. 7), colourless crystals (diisopropylether), R_f 0.26 (El A); IR (KBr): 1732.0, 1675.0 (C=O); MS: $M^+ = 633/635/637$ (Br_2), and 22 mg (10 % of theoretical) of 5-acetylamino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone (Item no. 6), colourless crystals (diisopropylether), R_f 0.29 (El B); IR (KBr): 1695.3 (C=O); MS: $M^+ = 591/593/595$ (Br_2), were obtained.

Example 11

1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-5-cyclohexanecarbonylamino-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone (Item no. 8)

58.64 mg (0.40 mmol) of cyclohexanecarboxylic acid chloride were added to a solution of 200 mg (0.363 mmol) of 5-amino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone and 0.056 ml (0.40 mmol) of triethylamine in 10 ml of THF at a reaction temperature of 0°C and the suspension formed was then stirred for 2 hours at ambient temperature. The mixture was evaporated down in vacuo, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (30-60 μ m) using dichloromethane/methanol/cyclohexane/conc. ammonia 400/40/40/2.5 v/v/v/v as eluant. By working up the appropriate fractions 106 mg (44 % of theoretical) of the desired compound were obtained in the form of colourless crystals (diisopropylether), R_f 0.67 (El B).

IR (KBr): 1695.3 (C=O)

MS: $(M-H_2O)^+ = 641/643/645$ (Br_2)

- 137 -

Example 12

5-aminocarbonylamino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone
(Item no. 9)

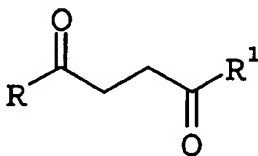
1.5 ml of 1N hydrochloric acid, followed by 47 mg (0.723 mmol) of sodium cyanate were added to a solution of 200 mg (0.363 mmol) of 5-amino-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-4-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-benzimidazolone in 5 ml of THF at a reaction temperature of 0°C. The ice bath was removed and the mixture was stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The orange-coloured solution was carefully combined with 100 ml of conc. aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and overlaid with 50 ml of tert.butylmethyl ether. The precipitate formed was suction filtered and purified by column chromatography on silica gel (30-60 μ m) using dichloromethane/methanol/cyclohexane/conc. ammonia 400/40/40/2.5 v/v/v/v as eluant. By working up the appropriate fractions 106 mg (44 % of theoretical) of the desired compound were obtained in the form of colourless crystals (THF/diethylether 1/1 v/v), R_f 0.12 (El B).

IR (KBr): 3435.0, 3354.0 (NH, NH₂); 1701.1, 1662.5 (C=O)

MS: ESI: (M+H)⁺ = 593/595/597 (Br₂); (M+Na)⁺ = 615/617/619 (Br₂)

Example 13

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



3-{1-[4-(3-chloro-4-dimethylaminophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 105)

- 138 -

A solution of 1.05 g (2.248 mmol) of (E)-3-{1-[4-(3-chloro-4-dimethylaminophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-yl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 104) in 110 ml of an ethanol-THF mixture (10/1 v/v) was hydrogenated at ambient temperature in the presence of 0.5 g of platinum on active charcoal until the uptake of hydrogen had ended. The mixture was freed from catalyst and solvent and purified by chromatography on silica gel using dichloromethane/methanol/conc. ammonia (95/5/0.3 v/v/v) as eluant. 0.36 g (34 % of theoretical) of a colourless substance were obtained, R_f 0.31 (El A).

IR (KBr): 1672, 1660 (C=O)

MS : M^+ = 468/470 (Cl)

The following was prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R_f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]
73	N10	B2	C28	Raney Ni as catalyst; MeOH as solvent	45	A	0.30	M^+ = 416	2229.6 (CN); 1664.5 (C=O)

Example 14

3-{1-[4-(4-aminomethylphenyl)-1-oxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 77)

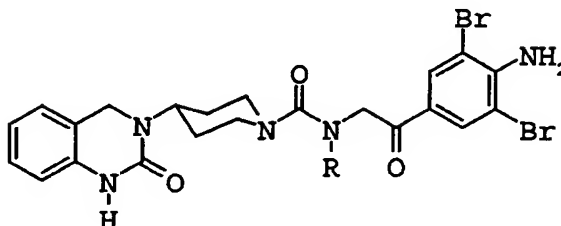
A solution of 0.48 g (1.153 mmol) of 3-{1-[4-(4-cyanophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone (Item no. 73) and 1.15 ml of 1N hydrochloric acid in 100 ml of methanol was hydrogenated at ambient temperature under 3 bar of pressure in the presence of 0.25 g of 10% palladium on active charcoal until the uptake of hydrogen had ended. The mixture was freed from catalyst and solvent and yielded 0.27 g (58 % of theoretical) of a colourless substance, R_f 0.30 (El A).

- 139 -

IR (KBr): 1662.5 (C=O)

MS : $M^+ = 406$; ESI: $(M+H)^+ = 407$ Example 15

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



N-[2-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-2-oxoethyl]-N-methyl-4-(3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl)-piperidine-1-carboxamide
(Item no. 110)

A mixture of 693.9 mg (3.0 mmol) of 3-(4-piperidinyl)-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone, 1.2 ml of DIEA and 50 ml of dichloromethane was added dropwise to a solution of 326.4 mg (1.1 mmol) of triphosgene in 50 ml of dichloromethane within 30 minutes. Then a mixture of 1075.4 mg (3.0 mmol) of 1-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-2-methylaminoethanone-hydrochloride, 2.4 ml DIEA and 50 ml dichloromethane was added all at once and stirred for 2 hours at ambient temperature. The mixture was washed with 50 ml of dilute aqueous citric acid solution, dried over sodium sulphate, then freed from solvent. The residue remaining was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (Amicon, 35-70 μ m) using EE/MeOH/conc. ammonia 95/5/0.5 v/v/v as eluant. The crystalline product was stirred with EtOH, suction filtered and, after washing with diethyl-ether, dried in a circulating air dryer. Yield: 0.1 g (6 % of theoretical). M.p. 268-270°C. R_f 0.48 (El A).

IR (KBr): 3442 (NH, NH₂), 1664 (C=O)MS : $M^+ = 577/579/581$ (Br₂);ESI: $(M-H)^- = 576/578/580$ (Br₂); $(M+Na)^+ = 600/602/604$ (Br₂)

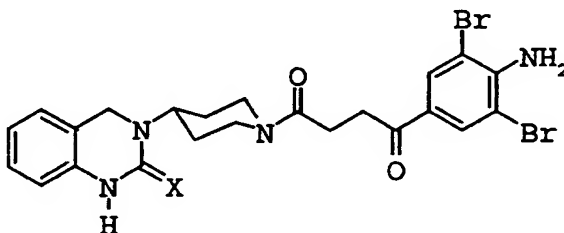
- 140 -

The following was prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	El	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]
126	N10	B11	C1	CDT (instead of triphosgene) / DIEA / THF	43	A	0.50	ESI: (M-H) ⁻ = 562/564/566 (Br ₂)	3450.4, 3323.2 (NH, NH ₂); 1662.5 (C=O)

Example 16

Preparation of compounds of general formula:



3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinethione (Item no. 183)

A mixture of 0.5 g (0.929 mmol) of 1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-N-[(2-aminophenyl)methyl]-4-piperidineamine, 0.2 g (1.122 mmol) of N,N'-thiocarbonyldiimidazole and 50 ml of DMF was stirred for 1.5 hours at a temperature of 100°C. After cooling the mixture was stirred into 300 ml of water, the precipitate formed was suction filtered, washed thoroughly with 5 ml of methanol and diethyl ether and dried in vacuo. 480 mg (89 % of theoretical) of the desired substance were obtained in the form of colourless crystals, R_f 0.97 (El A).

IR (KBr): 1669 (C=O)

MS : M⁺ = 578/580/582 (Br₂)

- 141 -

The following was prepared analogously:

Item no.	N	B	C	remarks	% yield	EI	R _f	MS	IR [cm ⁻¹]	m.p. [°C]
184	N73	B2	C1	cyanoimino-diphenylcarbonate instead of N,N'-thiocarbonyl-diimidazole / DMF / 100°C	91	A	0.91	M ⁺ = 586/588/590 (Br ₂)	2187 (CN)	colourless crystals

The Examples which follow illustrate the preparation of some pharmaceutical formulations which contain any desired compound of general formula I as active ingredient:

Example I

Capsules for powder inhalation containing 1 mg of active ingredient

Composition:

1 capsule for powder inhalation contains:

active ingredient	1.0 mg
lactose	20.0 mg
hard gelatine capsules	<u>50.0 mg</u>
	71.0 mg

Method of preparation:

The active ingredient is ground to the particle size required for inhaled substances. The ground active ingredient is homogeneously mixed with the lactose. The mixture is transferred into hard gelatine capsules.

- 142 -

Example IIInhalable solution for Respimat[®] containing 1 mg of active ingredient

Composition:

1 puff contains:

active ingredient	1.0	mg
benzalkonium chloride	0.002	mg
disodium edetate	0.0075	mg
purified water ad	15.0	μl

Method of preparation:

The active ingredient and benzalkonium chloride are dissolved in water and transferred into Respimat[®] cartridges.

Example IIIInhalable solution for nebulisers containing 1 mg of active ingredient

Composition:

1 vial contains:

active ingredient	0.1	g
sodium chloride	0.18	g
benzalkonium chloride	0.002	g
purified water ad	20.0	ml

- 143 -

Method of preparation:

The active ingredient, sodium chloride and benzalkonium chloride are dissolved in water.

Example IVPropellant gas-operated metering aerosol containing 1 mg of active ingredientComposition:

1 puff contains:

active ingredient	1.0 mg
lecithin	0.1 %
propellant gas ad	50.0 µl

Method of preparation:

The micronised active ingredient is homogeneously suspended in the mixture of lecithin and propellant gas. The suspension is transferred into a pressurised container with a metering valve.

Example VNasal spray containing 1 mg of active ingredientComposition:

active ingredient	1.0 mg
sodium chloride	0.9 mg
benzalkonium chloride	0.025 mg
disodium edetate	0.05 mg
purified water ad	0.1 ml

- 144 -

Method of preparation:

The active ingredient and the excipients are dissolved in water and transferred into a suitable container.

Example VIInjectable solution containing 5 mg of active substance per
5 mlComposition:

active substance	5 mg
glucose	250 mg
human serum albumin	10 mg
glycofurol	250 mg
water for injections ad	5 ml

Preparation:

Glycofurol and glucose are dissolved in water for injections (WfI); human serum albumin is added; active ingredient is dissolved with heating; made up to specified volume with WfI; transferred into ampoules under nitrogen gas.

Example VIIInjectable solution containing 100 mg of active substance per
20 mlComposition:

active substance	100 mg
monopotassium dihydrogen phosphate	
= KH_2PO_4	12 mg
disodium hydrogen phosphate	
= $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$	2 mg

- 145 -

sodium chloride	180 mg
human serum albumin	50 mg
Polysorbate 80	20 mg
water for injections ad	20 ml

Preparation:

Polysorbate 80, sodium chloride, monopotassium dihydrogen phosphate and disodium hydrogen phosphate are dissolved in water for injections (WfI); human serum albumin is added; active ingredient is dissolved with heating; made up to specified volume with WfI; transferred into ampoules.

Example VIIILyophilisate containing 10 mg of active substanceComposition:

Active substance	10 mg
Mannitol	300 mg
human serum albumin	20 mg

Preparation:

Mannitol is dissolved in water for injections (WfI); human serum albumin is added; active ingredient is dissolved with heating; made up to specified volume with WfI; transferred into vials; freeze-dried.

Solvent for lyophilisate:

Polysorbate 80 = Tween 80	20 mg
mannitol	200 mg
water for injections ad	10 ml

- 146 -

Preparation:

Polysorbate 80 and mannitol are dissolved in water for injections (WfI); transferred into ampoules.

Example IXTablets containing 20 mg of active substanceComposition:

active substance	20 mg
lactose	120 mg
maize starch	40 mg
magnesium stearate	2 mg
Povidone K 25	18 mg

Preparation:

Active substance, lactose and maize starch are homogeneously mixed; granulated with an aqueous solution of Povidone; mixed with magnesium stearate; compressed in a tablet press; weight of tablet 200 mg.

Example XCapsules containing 20 mg active substanceComposition:

active substance	20 mg
maize starch	80 mg
highly dispersed silica	5 mg
magnesium stearate	2.5 mg

Preparation:

Active substance, maize starch and silica are homogeneously mixed; mixed with magnesium stearate; the mixture is packed

- 147 -

into size 3 hard gelatine capsules in a capsule filling machine.

Example XI

Suppositories containing 50 mg of active substance

Composition:

active substance	50 mg
hard fat (Adeps solidus) q.s. ad	1700 mg

Preparation:

Hard fat is melted at about 38°C; ground active substance is homogeneously dispersed in the molten hard fat; after cooling to about 35°C it is poured into chilled moulds.

Example XII

Injectable solution containing 10 mg of active substance per 1 ml

Composition:

active substance	10 mg
mannitol	50 mg
human serum albumin	10 mg
water for injections ad	1 ml

- 148 -

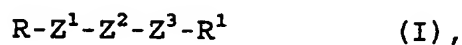
Preparation:

Mannitol is dissolved in water for injections (WfI); human serum albumin is added; active ingredient is dissolved with heating; made up to specified volume with WfI; transferred into ampoules under nitrogen gas.

- 149 -

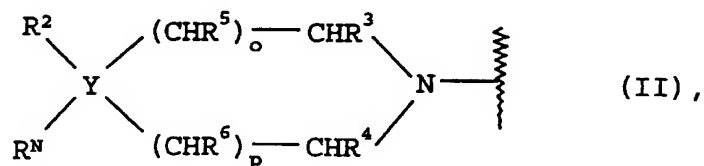
Patent Claims

1. Arylalkanes, arylalkenes and aryl-azaalkanes of general formula



wherein

R denotes the H₂N group or the group of formula



wherein

o denotes the number 1 or, if Y does not denote a nitrogen atom, also denotes the number 0,

p denotes the number 1 or, if Y does not denote a nitrogen atom, also denotes the number 0,

Y denotes the carbon atom or, if Y is not linked to a heteroatom, may also denote the nitrogen atom,

R² denotes a pair of free electrons, if Y denotes the nitrogen atom, or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, it denotes the hydrogen atom or an alkyl group with 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

- 150 -

R^3 and R^4 denote hydrogen atoms or together denote an alkylene bridge with 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

R^5 and R^6 denote hydrogen atoms or together denote a one- to three-membered unbranched alkylene bridge wherein a methylene group may be replaced by a methylimino group,

R^N denotes a saturated, mono- or diunsaturated 5- to 7-membered aza, diaza, triaza, oxaza, thiaza, thiadiazia or S,S-dioxido-thiadiazia heterocycle,

wherein the abovementioned heterocycles may be linked via a carbon or nitrogen atom and

may contain, adjacent to a nitrogen atom, a carbonyl, thioxo or iminocarbonyl group or two carbonyl groups or a carbonyl group and a thioxo or iminocarbonyl group, wherein the abovementioned iminocarbonyl groups may be substituted by a cyano group or by an alkoxycarbonyl group with 1 to 4 carbon atoms in the alkyl moiety,

may be substituted at one of the nitrogen atoms by an alkanoyl, hydroxycarbonylalkyl or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group,

may be substituted at one or two carbon atoms by a branched or unbranched alkyl group, by a phenyl, phenylmethyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, pyridinyl, diazinyl, furyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, 1,3-oxazolyl, 1,3-thiazolyl, isoxazolyl, pyrazolyl, 1-methylpyrazolyl, imidazolyl or 1-methylimidazolyl group, wherein the substituents may be identical or different,

- 151 -

wherein additionally an unbranched alkylene group with 3 to 6 carbon atoms may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or the group =CH-S-CH= may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered saturated heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or

an olefinic double bond of one of the abovementioned unsaturated heterocycles may be fused to a benzene, pyridine, diazine, 1,3-oxazole, thiophene, furan, thiazole, pyrrole, N-methyl-pyrrole, quinoline, imidazole or N-methyl-imidazole ring,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, R^N denotes the hydroxy group, a benzoylaminocarbonylamino group, a phenylamino group optionally substituted at the aniline nitrogen by an aminocarbonyl group or a phenylmethylamino group optionally substituted at the benzylamine nitrogen by an alkoxycarbonyl group,

wherein the phenyl, pyridinyl, diazinyl, furyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, 1,3-oxazolyl, 1,3-thiazolyl, isoxazolyl, pyrazolyl, 1-methylpyrazolyl, imidazolyl or 1-methylimidazolyl groups contained in the groups mentioned under R^N as well as benzo-, thieno-, pyrido-, diazino- and quinolino-fused heterocycles in the carbon skeleton may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted by fluorine, chlorine or bromine atoms, by alkyl groups, by cycloalkyl groups with 3 to 8 carbon atoms, nitro, alkoxy, alkylthio, alkylsulphinyl, alkylsulphonyl, alkylsulphonylamino, phenyl, phenylalkoxy, trifluoromethyl, alkoxycarbonyl, alkoxycarbonylalkyl, carboxy, carboxyalkyl,

- 152 -

dialkylaminoalkyl, hydroxy, amino, acetylamino, propionylamino, cycloalkanecarbonylamino, benzoyl, benzoylamino, benzoylmethylamino, aminocarbonyl, alkylaminocarbonyl, dialkylaminocarbonyl, hydroxyalkylaminocarbonyl, (4-morpholinyl)carbonyl, (1-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl, (1-piperidinyl)carbonyl, (hexahydro-1-azepinyl)carbonyl, (4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)piperidinyl]carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)piperidinyl]carbonylamino, methylenedioxy, aminocarbonylamino, aminocarbonylaminoalkyl, alkylaminocarbonylamino, dialkylaminocarbonylamino, aminomethyl, alkanoyl, cyano, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoromethylthio, trifluoromethylsulphonyl or trifluoromethylsulphonyl groups, wherein the substituents may be identical or different and the abovementioned benzoyl, benzoylamino, benzoylaminoaminocarbonylamino and benzoylmethylamino groups may in turn additionally be substituted in the phenyl moiety by a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom, an alkyl, trifluoromethyl, amino or acetylamino group,

and the alkyl groups contained in the abovementioned groups, unless otherwise stated, may contain 1 to 5 carbon atoms,

or, if $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ denotes the divalent group $\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}$, R may also denote the 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-1'-yl group,

Z^1 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_3-$,

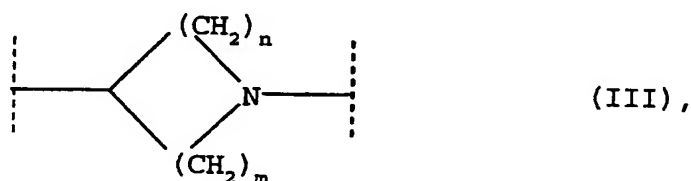
- 153 -

wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or a hydroxy group,

one of the groups $-NH-CH_2$, $-CH_2-NH$, $-NH-(CH_2)_2-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH-$,

wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group and the nitrogen atoms are each linked to a carbonyl group of the groups Z^1 or Z^3 ,

the group $-CH=CH-$ or a divalent group of general formula



wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2, 3 or 4 and

the nitrogen atom is linked to a carbonyl group of the group Z^3 ,

Z^3 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group,

wherein at least one of the groups Z^1 and Z^3 denotes a carbonyl group, and

R^1 denotes a phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, benzimidazolyl, 1,3-dihydro-2-oxobenzimidazolyl, octahydro-9-phenanthryl or benzodioxolanyl group,

- 154 -

wherein the abovementioned aromatic and heteroaromatic groups in the carbon skeleton may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted by fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atoms, by alkyl groups, by cycloalkyl groups with 3 to 8 carbon atoms, phenylalkyl groups, hydroxy, alkoxy, phenyl, phenylalkoxy, trifluoromethyl, alkoxycarbonylalkyl, carboxyalkyl, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxy, dialkylaminoalkyl, amino, aminoalkyl, alkylamino, dialkylamino, acetylamino, propionylamino, benzoyl, benzoylamino, benzoylmethylamino, 4-(dialkylaminoalkyl)-1-piperazinyl, piperidinyl, 4-(1-piperidinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(4-dialkylaminoalkyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl, nitro, methanesulphonyloxy, aminocarbonyl, alkylaminocarbonyl, dialkylaminocarbonyl, alkanoyl, cyano, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoromethylthio, trifluoromethylsulphinyl or trifluoromethylsulphonyl groups and the substituents may be identical or different and the abovementioned benzoyl, benzoylamino and benzoylmethylamino groups may in turn additionally be substituted in the phenyl moiety by a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom or by an alkyl, trifluoromethyl, amino or acetylamino group,

wherein the hydroxy, amino and imidazolyl groups contained in the abovementioned groups may be substituted with protecting groups well known from peptide chemistry, preferably with the acetyl, benzyloxycarbonyl or tert.butyloxycarbonyl group,

all the abovementioned alkyl and alkoxy groups and the alkyl or alkylene moieties present inside the other groups specified may contain 1 to 7 carbon atoms, unless otherwise stated, and

- 156 -

R^N denotes a monocyclic saturated, mono- or diunsaturated 5- to 7-membered aza, diaza, triaza, oxaza, thiaza, thiadiaz- or S,S-dioxido-thiadiaz heterocycle containing one to two imino groups,

wherein the abovementioned heterocycles are linked via a carbon or nitrogen atom and

adjacent to a nitrogen atom contain a carbonyl, thioxo or iminocarbonyl group or two carbonyl groups or a carbonyl group and a thioxo or iminocarbonyl group, wherein the abovementioned iminocarbonyl groups may be substituted by a cyano group or by an alkoxycarbonyl group with 1 to 4 carbon atoms in the alkyl moiety,

the abovementioned heterocycles containing two imino groups may be substituted at one of the imino-nitrogen atoms by an alkanoyl, hydroxycarbonylalkyl or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group with 1 to 3 carbon atoms in the alkyl moieties,

may be substituted at one or two carbon atoms by an unbranched alkyl group, by a phenyl, phenylmethyl, naphthyl, biphenyl or thienyl group, wherein the substituents may be identical or different,

and wherein additionally an unbranched alkylene group with 3 to 4 carbon atoms may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or the group =CH-S-CH= may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered saturated heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or

- 157 -

an olefinic double bond of one of the abovementioned unsaturated heterocycles may be fused to a benzene, pyridine, diazine, thiophene or quinoline ring,

with the provisos that

(i) R^N does not take on the meaning of the 2,6-dioxo-3-phenyl-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-1H-pyrimidin-3-yl group, the 2-oxo-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-imidazolyl group optionally monosubstituted by an acyl group in the 3 position and the 2(1H)-oxo-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-1-pyrimidinyl group and

(ii) R^1 does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-chlorophenyl or 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-bromophenyl group if R^N takes on the meaning of the 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxobenzimidazol-1-yl, 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-thioxobenzimidazol-1-yl, 2(1H)-oxoquinoxalin-1-yl, 3-oxo-2,3-dihydrobenzoxazin-4-yl, 3-oxo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydrobenz[f][1,4]oxazepin-4-yl or 2(1H)-oxoquinolin-3-yl group,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, with the proviso that

(i) R^1 does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl or naphthyl group or

(ii) Z^2 does not denote a group containing N or

(iii) Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group,

R^N may also represent the hydroxy group

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom and Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group, a benzoylamino-carbonylamino group, a phenylamino group optionally at least monosubstituted at the aniline nitrogen by an aminocarbonyl group and in the phenyl moiety,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group and in the group of general formula (II) o and p each assume the value 1, a phenylmethyldamino group optionally at least monosubstituted at the benzylamine nitrogen by a C₁₋₄-alkoxy-carbonyl group and in the phenyl moiety,

wherein the phenyl and thienyl groups contained in the groups mentioned under R^N as well as benzo-, thieno-, pyrido-, diazino- and quinolino-fused heterocycles may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by fluorine, chlorine or bromine atoms, by methyl groups, by cycloalkyl groups with 5 to 6 carbon atoms, nitro, methoxy, methylthio, methylsulphanyl, methylsulphonyl, methanesulphonylamino, phenyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxycarbonyl, carboxy, hydroxy, amino, acetylamino, cyclohexanecarbonylamino, aminocarbonyl, hydroxyethylaminocarbonyl, (4-morpholinyl)carbonyl, (1-pyrrolidinyl)carbonyl, (1-piperidinyl)carbonyl, (hexahydro-1-azepinyl)carbonyl, (4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)-piperidinyl]carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)piperidinyl]-carbonylamino, aminocarbonylamino, alkylaminocarbonylamino, dialkylaminocarbonylamino, aminomethyl, acetyl, cyano or trifluoromethoxy groups, wherein the substituents may be identical or different,

- 159 -

or, if $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ denotes the divalent group $\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}$, R may also denote the 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidiny-1'-yl group,

Z^1 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_3-$,

wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or a hydroxy group,

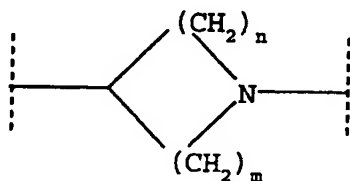
one of the groups

$-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}$, $-\text{NH}-(\text{CH}_2)_2-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-\text{NH}-$,

wherein the nitrogen atoms are each linked to a carbonyl group of the groups Z^1 or Z^3 and

the hydrogen atom of the imino group may in each case be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group,

the group $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ or, if R^1 does not denote an aromatic or heteroaromatic group substituted by cycloalkyl or phenyl groups or R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on benzene ring, it also denotes a divalent group of general formula



(III),

wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2 or 3 and

- 160 -

the nitrogen atom is linked to the group Z^3 with the meaning of a carbonyl group,

Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group or, if R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on aromatic or heteroaromatic ring, it also denotes the methylene group,

wherein at least one of the groups Z^1 and Z^3 denotes a carbonyl group and the sequence $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ is at least four-membered, and

R^1 denotes a mono-, di- or trisubstituted phenyl group, a benzimidazolyl, 1,3-dihydro-2-oxobenzimidazolyl, octahydro-9-phenanthryl or benzodioxolanyl group or, if Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group, R^1 may also denote a 1-naphthyl or 2-naphthyl group,

wherein the abovementioned aromatic and heteroaromatic groups may be mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atoms, by alkyl groups with 1 to 4 carbon atoms, by cycloalkyl groups with 5 to 6 carbon atoms, hydroxy, alkoxy, phenyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, carboxy, amino, aminomethyl, methylamino, dimethylamino, acetylamino, 4-[3-(dimethylaminopropyl)]-1-piperazinyl, piperidinyl, 4-(1-piperidinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-[4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl]-1-piperidinyl, nitro, methanesulphonyloxy, aminocarbonyl, acetyl, cyano or trifluoromethoxy groups and the substituents may be identical or different,

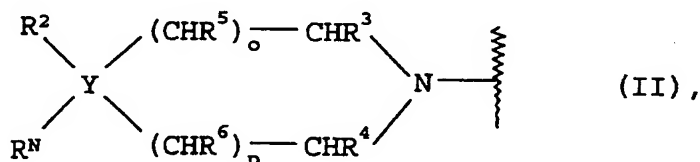
- 161 -

wherein all the abovementioned alkyl and alkoxy groups and the alkyl or alkylene moieties present inside the other groups specified may contain 1 to 5 carbon atoms unless otherwise stated,

the tautomers, diastereomers, enantiomers and salts thereof.

3. Compounds of the above general formula I according to claim 1, wherein

R denotes the H₂N group, if Z¹ and Z³ each denote the CO group and R¹ is at least disubstituted by the H₂N group and an additional substituent or if Z² does not contain an imino group, or the group of formula



wherein

o, p and Y are as hereinbefore defined,

R² denotes a pair of free electrons, if Y denotes the nitrogen atom, or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, R² denotes the hydrogen atom or a methyl group,

R³ and R⁴ denote hydrogen atoms or together denote an alkylene bridge with 2 carbon atoms,

R⁵ and R⁶ denote hydrogen atoms or together denote an n-propylene bridge wherein the central methylene group may be replaced by a methylimino group,

- 162 -

R^N denotes a monocyclic saturated, mono- or diunsaturated 5- to 7-membered aza, diaza, triaza, thiadiazia or S,S-dioxido-thiadiazia heterocycle containing one to two imino groups,

wherein the abovementioned heterocycles are linked via a carbon or nitrogen atom and

adjacent to a nitrogen atom contain a carbonyl, thioxo or iminocarbonyl group or two carbonyl groups or a carbonyl group and a thioxo or iminocarbonyl group, wherein the abovementioned iminocarbonyl groups may be substituted by a cyano group or by a tert.butoxycarbonyl group,

the abovementioned heterocycles containing two imino groups may be substituted at one of the imino-nitrogen atoms by an acetyl, carboxymethyl or methoxycarbonylmethyl group,

may be substituted at one or two carbon atoms by a methyl group, by a phenyl, phenylmethyl, naphthyl, biphenyl or thienyl group, wherein the substituents may be identical or different,

and wherein additionally an unbranched alkylene group with 4 carbon atoms may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or the group $=CH-S-CH=$ may be attached to the abovementioned 5- to 7-membered saturated heterocycles via two adjacent carbon atoms or

- 163 -

an olefinic double bond of one of the abovementioned unsaturated heterocycles may be fused to a benzene, pyridine, diazine, thiophene or quinoline ring,

with the provisos that

(i) R^N does not take on the meaning of the 2,6-dioxo-3-phenyl-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-1H-pyrimidin-3-yl group, the 2-oxo-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-imidazolyl group optionally monosubstituted in the 3 position by an acyl group and the 2(1H)-oxo-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-1-pyrimidinyl group, and

(ii) R^1 does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-chlorophenyl or 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-bromophenyl group, if R^N takes on the meaning of the 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxobenzimidazol-1-yl, 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-thioxobenzimidazol-1-yl, 2(1H)oxoquinoxalin-1-yl, 3-oxo-2,3-dihydrobenzoxazin-4-yl, 3-oxo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydrobenz[f][1,4]oxazepin-4-yl or 2(1H)-oxoquinolin-3-yl group,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, with the proviso that

(i) R^1 does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl or naphthyl group or

(ii) Z^2 does not denote a group containing N, or

(iii) Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group,

R^N may also denote the hydroxy group,

- 164 -

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom and Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group, a benzoylaminocarbonylamino group, a phenylamino group optionally at least monosubstituted by an aminocarbonyl group at the aniline nitrogen and in the phenyl moiety,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group and in the group of general formula (II) o and p each assume the value 1, a phenylmethyldamino group optionally at least monosubstituted by a tert. butoxycarbonyl group at the benzylamine nitrogen and in the phenyl moiety,

wherein the phenyl and thienyl groups contained in the groups mentioned under R^N as well as benzo-, thieno-, pyrido-, diazino- and quinolino-fused heterocycles may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by fluorine, chlorine or bromine atoms, by methyl, nitro, methoxy, methanesulphonylamino, phenyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxycarbonyl, carboxy, hydroxy, amino, acetylamino, cyclohexanecarbonylamino, aminocarbonyl, hydroxyethylaminocarbonyl, (4-morpholinyl)carbonyl, (4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)-1-piperidinyl]carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)piperidinyl]carbonylamino, aminomethyl or aminocarbonylamino groups, wherein the substituents may be identical or different,

or, if $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ denotes the divalent group $\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}$, R may also denote the 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-1'-yl group,

- 165 -

Z^1 denotes methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2-$ or $-(CH_2)_3-$,

wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or hydroxy group,

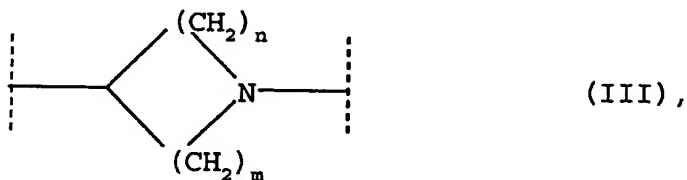
one of the groups

$-NH-CH_2$, $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH-$,

wherein the nitrogen atoms are each linked to a carbonyl group of the groups Z^1 or Z^3 and

the hydrogen atom of the imino group may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group in each case,

the group $-CH=CH-$ or, if R^1 does not denote an aromatic or heteroaromatic group substituted by cycloalkyl or phenyl groups or R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on benzene ring, it may also denote a divalent group of general formula



wherein

m denotes one of the numbers 1 or 2 and n denotes one of the numbers 1, 2 or 3 and the nitrogen atom is linked to the group Z^3 with the meaning of a carbonyl group,

- 166 -

Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group or, if R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on aromatic or heteroaromatic ring, it may also denote the methylene group,

wherein at least one of the groups Z^1 and Z^3 denotes a carbonyl group and the sequence $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ is at least four-membered, and

R^1 denotes a monosubstituted phenyl group, a 5-benzimidazolyl, 1,3-dihydro-2-oxobenzimidazol-5-yl, octahydro-9-phenanthryl or 5-benzodioxolanyl group or, if Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group, it may also denote a 1-naphthyl or 2-naphthyl group,

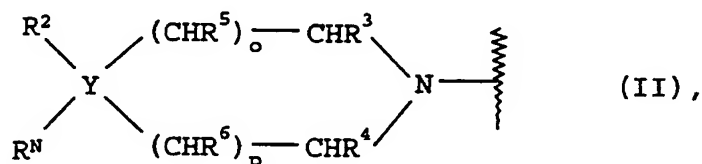
wherein the abovementioned aromatic and heteroaromatic groups may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atoms, by alkyl groups with 1 to 4 carbon atoms, by cyclohexyl, hydroxy, alkoxy groups with up to 3 carbon atoms in the alkyl moiety, phenyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, carboxy, amino, aminomethyl, methylamino, dimethylamino, acetylamino, 4-[3-(dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl, piperidinyl, 4-(1-piperidinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-[4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl)-1-piperidinyl, nitro, cyano or trifluoromethoxy groups and the substituents may be identical or different,

the tautomers, diastereomers, enantiomers and salts thereof.

4. Compounds of the above general formula I according to claim 1, wherein

- 167 -

R denotes the H₂N group, if Z¹ and Z³ each denote the CO group and R¹ is at least disubstituted by the H₂N group and an additional substituent or if Z² does not contain an imino group, or R denotes the group of formula



wherein

Y denotes the carbon atom and o and p independently of one another denotes the numbers 1 or 0 or

Y denotes the nitrogen atom and o and p each represent the number 1,

R² denotes a pair of free electrons, if Y denotes the nitrogen atom, or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, R² denotes the hydrogen atom or the methyl group,

R³ and R⁴ denote hydrogen atoms or together denote a ethylene bridge,

R⁵ and R⁶ denote hydrogen atoms or together denote a -CH₂-N(CH₃)-CH₂- bridge,

R^N denotes a 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-1-yl, 1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxopyrimido[2,3-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 4-phenyl-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 1,3-dihydro-5-methyl-4-phenyl-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxothieno[3,4-d]pyri-

midin-3-yl, 1,3-dihydro-4-(3-thienyl)-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 2,4-dihydro-5-phenyl-3(3H)-oxo-1,2,4-triazol-2-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxothieno[3,2-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxopyrido[3,4-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxopyrido[4,3-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinolin-3-yl, 2(1H)-oxoquinoxalin-3-yl, 1,1-dioxido-3(4H)-oxo-1,2,4-benzothiadiazin-2-yl, 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxoimidazo[4,5-d]pyrimidin-3-yl, 3,4,4a,5,6,7,8,8a-octahydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl, 2,5-dioxo-4-(phenylmethyl)-imidazolidin-1-yl, 2,5-dioxo-4-phenyl-imidazolidin-1-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2,2-dioxido-2,1,3-benzothiadiazin-3-yl, 1,3-dihydro-4-(2-naphthyl)-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 4-(4-biphenyl)-1,3-dihydro-2H-2-oxoimidazol-1-yl, 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxoimidazo[4,5-c]quinolin-3-yl, 2-(dimethylethoxycarbonylamino)-3,4-dihydroquinazolin-3-yl, 2-amino-3,4-dihydroquinazolin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-thioxoquinazolin-3-yl, 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-cyanoiminoquinazolin-3-yl, 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2(1H)-oxo-1,3-benzodiazepin-3-yl or 2,4(1H,3H)-dioxoquinazolin-3-yl group or,

if R¹ does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-chlorophenyl or 2-alkoxy-4-acetylamino-5-bromophenyl group, may also denote a 1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-oxobenzimidazol-1-yl or 2(1H)-oxoquinolin-3-yl group,

wherein the abovementioned mono- and bicyclic heterocycles containing two imino groups may be substituted at one of the imino-nitrogen atoms by an acetyl, carboxymethyl or methoxycarbonylmethyl group and/or

- 169 -

may additionally be mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton and/or at the phenyl groups contained in these groups by fluorine, chlorine or bromine atoms, by methyl groups, nitro, methoxy, methanesulphonylamino, phenyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxycarbonyl, carboxy, hydroxy, amino, acetylamino, cyclohexanecarbonylamino, aminocarbonyl, hydroxyethylaminocarbonyl, (4-morpholinyl)carbonyl, (4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)-1-piperidinyl]carbonyl, [4-(1-piperidinyl)piperidinyl]-carbonylamino or aminocarbonylamino groups, wherein the substituents may be identical or different and multiple substitution with the last six substituents is ruled out,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, with the proviso that

(i) R^1 does not denote a 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-bromophenyl, 2-alkoxy-4-amino-5-chlorophenyl or naphthyl group or

(ii) Z^2 does not denote an N-containing group,

R^N may also denote the hydroxy group,

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom and Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group, a benzoylamino carbonylamino group, a phenylamino group optionally at least monosubstituted by an aminocarbonyl group at the aniline nitrogen and in the phenyl moiety

or, if Y denotes the carbon atom, Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the CO group and in the group of general formula (II) o and p each assume the value 1, a phenylmethylamino group optionally at least monosubstituted by a tert.

- 170 -

butoxycarbonyl group at the benzylamine nitrogen and in the phenyl moiety,

or, if $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ denotes the divalent group $\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}$, R may also denote the 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidiny-1'-yl group,

Z^1 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_3-$,

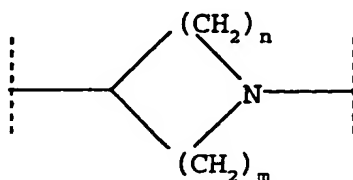
wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a methyl or hydroxy group,

one of the groups

$-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_2$, $-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}-$ or $-(\text{CH}_2)_2-\text{NH}-$,

wherein the nitrogen atoms are each linked to a carbonyl group of the groups Z^1 or Z^3 and the hydrogen atom of the imino group may be replaced in each case by the methyl group,

the group $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ or, if R^1 does not represent an aromatic or heteroaromatic group substituted by cycloalkyl or phenyl groups or R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on benzene ring, it also denotes a divalent group of general formula



(III),

wherein

- 171 -

m denotes one of the numbers 1 or 2 and n denotes one of the numbers 1, 2 or 3 and the nitrogen atom is linked to the group Z^3 with the meaning of a carbonyl group,

Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group or, if R^N is not linked via an imino group bound in the adjacent position to a fused-on aromatic or heteroaromatic ring, it also denotes the methylene group,

wherein at least one of the groups Z^1 and Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group and the sequence $Z^1-Z^2-Z^3$ is at least four-membered, and

R^1 is defined as in claim 3,

the tautomers, diastereomers, enantiomers and salts thereof.

5. Compounds of the above general formula I according to claims 1 to 4, characterised in that they are described in Examples 1 to 16.

6. The following compounds of general formula I:

1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone,

1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-(3-trifluoromethylphenyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone,

1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-(3-thienyl)-2(2H)-imidazolone,

- 172 -

3-[1'-(4-amino-3,5-dibromobenzoyl)-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-4-yl]-
3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone,

(E)-3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-
yl]-4-piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone,

(E)-1-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxo-2-buten-1-
yl]-4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-4-phenyl-2(2H)-imidazolone,

3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-
piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinone,

methyl 3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-
piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazoline-7-carboxylate,

3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-
piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazoline-7-carboxamide,

3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-
piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-2(1H)-
oxoquinazolin-7-carboxamide,

3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-
4-piperidinyl}-1,3-dihydro-2(2H)-imidazo[4.5-c]quinolinone and

3-{1-[4-(4-amino-3,5-dibromophenyl)-1,4-dioxobutyl]-4-
piperidinyl}-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinazolinethione

and the salts thereof.

7. Physiologically acceptable salts of the compounds according to at least one of claims 1 to 6 with inorganic or organic acids or bases.

8. Pharmaceutical compositions containing a compound according to at least one of claims 1 to 6 or a physiologically

- 173 -

acceptable salt according to claim 7 optionally together with one or more inert carriers and/or diluents.

9. Use of a compound according to at least one of claims 1 to 7 for preparing a pharmaceutical composition which has CGRP-antagonistic properties.

10. Use of a compound according to at least one of claims 1 to 7 for preparing a pharmaceutical composition which is suitable for the acute and prophylactic treatment of headaches, for treating non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, cardiovascular diseases, skin diseases, inflammatory diseases, allergic rhinitis, asthma, diseases which are accompanied by excessive vasodilatation and consequent reductions in blood flow through the tissues, morphine tolerance or for controlling menopausal hot flushes.

11. Process for preparing a pharmaceutical composition according to claim 8, characterised in that a compound according to at least one of claims 1 to 7 is incorporated in one or more inert carriers and/or diluents by a non-chemical method.

12. Process for preparing the compounds of general formula I according to claims 1 to 7, characterised in that

a) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein Z^1 denotes the methylene group, Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2$, $-(CH_2)_3$ - or $-CH=CH-$ and Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group and

R has the meanings given in claims 1 to 6 with the exception of a 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidinyl-1'-yl group,

- 174 -

a compound of general formula



wherein

R' has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6 with the exception of a 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-oxoquinazolin-3-yl]-[1.4']bipiperidiny-1'-yl group,

is reacted with a compound of general formula



wherein

R¹ is defined as in claims 1 to 6,

Z² denotes one of the groups -(CH₂)₂, -(CH₂)₃- or -CH=CH-,

Z³ denotes the carbonyl group and

X denotes a leaving group, or

b) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein

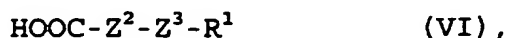
Z¹ denotes the carbonyl group,

Z² denotes one of the groups -(CH₂)₂- or -(CH₂)₃, wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C₁₋₃-alkyl or a hydroxy group,

one of the groups -CH₂-NH- or -(CH₂)₂-NH, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C₁₋₃-alkyl group, or the group -CH=CH- and

Z³ denotes the methylene or carbonyl group,

a carboxylic acid of general formula



- 175 -

wherein

R^1 is defined as in claims 1 to 6,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2-$ or $-(CH_2)_3$, wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or a hydroxy group,

one of the groups $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group, or the group $-CH=CH-$, and

Z^3 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group,

is coupled with a compound of general formula



wherein

R has the meanings given in claims 1 to 6, or

c) in order to prepare compounds of general formula I wherein Z^1 denotes the carbonyl group,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2-$ or $-(CH_2)_3$, wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or hydroxy group, one of the groups $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group, or the group $-CH=CH-$ and

Z^3 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group,

a compound of general formula



wherein

R^1 is defined as in claims 1 to 6,

- 176 -

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-(CH_2)_2-$ or $-(CH_2)_3$, wherein a hydrogen atom may be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl or a hydroxy group,

one of the groups $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group, or the group $-CH=CH-$,

Z^3 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group and

Nu denotes a leaving group,

is coupled with a compound of general formula

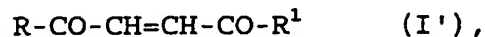


wherein

R is defined as in claims 1 to 6, or

d) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the carbonyl group and Z^2 denotes the group $-(CH_2)_2-$:

a compound of general formula



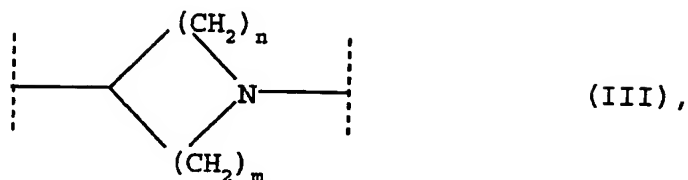
wherein

R and R^1 are defined as in claims 1 to 6, is catalytically hydrogenated, or

e) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein Z^1 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond, Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom

- 177 -

of the imino group may each be replaced by a C₁₋₃-alkyl group, or a divalent group of general formula



wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2, 3 or 4 and

Z³ denotes the carbonyl group:

a carboxylic acid of general formula



wherein

R¹ is defined as in claims 1 to 6,

is coupled with a compound of general formula

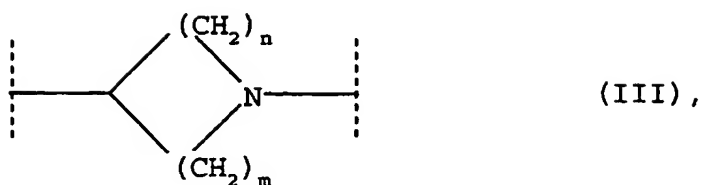


wherein

R is defined as in claims 1 to 6,

Z¹ denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z² denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond, Z² denotes one of the groups -CH₂-NH- or -(CH₂)₂-NH, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C₁₋₃-alkyl group, or a divalent group of general formula

- 178 -



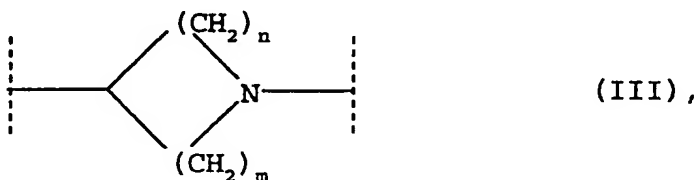
wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2, 3 or 4 and

Z³ denotes the carbonyl group, or

f) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein Z¹ denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z² denotes a divalent group of general formula III, Z¹ may also denote a bond,

Z² denotes one of the groups -CH₂-NH- or -(CH₂)₂-NH, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C₁₋₃-alkyl group, or Z¹ denotes a divalent group of general formula



wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2, 3 or 4 and

Z³ denotes the carbonyl group,

a compound of general formula



- 179 -

wherein

R^1 is defined as in claims 1 to 6 and

Nu denotes a leaving group,

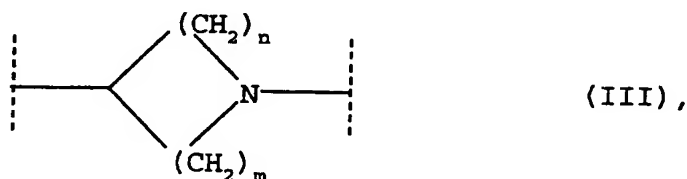
is coupled with a compound of general formula



wherein

R is defined as in claims 1 to 6,

Z^1 denotes a methylene or carbonyl group or, if Z^2 denotes a divalent group of general formula III, may also denote a bond, Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-CH_2-NH-$ or $-(CH_2)_2-NH$ wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group, or a divalent group of general formula



wherein

m and n independently of one another denote one of the numbers 1, 2, 3 or 4 and

Z^3 denotes the carbonyl group, or

g) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein R and R^1 are defined as in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that they must not carry any free amino groups,

Z^1 denotes the carbonyl group,

Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-NH-CH_2-$ or $-NH-(CH_2)_2$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group and

Z^3 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group,

- 180 -

an amine of general formula



wherein

R'' has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that the group does not contain a free amino group,

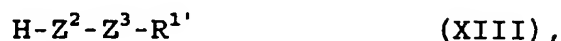
is reacted with a carbonic acid derivative of general formula



wherein

X^1 denotes a nucleofugic group

and with a compound of general formula



wherein

the group $R^{1'}$ has the meanings given for R^1 in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that the group does not contain a free amino group,

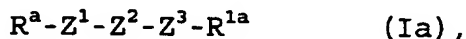
Z^2 denotes one of the groups $-NH-CH_2-$ or $-NH-(CH_2)_2-$, wherein a hydrogen atom bound to a carbon atom and/or the hydrogen atom of the imino group may each be replaced by a C_{1-3} -alkyl group and

Z^3 denotes the methylene or carbonyl group, or

- 181 -

h) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein at least one of the groups R and R¹ contains one or more carboxy groups:

a carboxylic acid ester of general formula



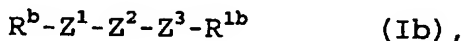
wherein

Z¹, Z² and Z³ are defined as in claims 1 to 6 and R^a and R^{1a} have the meanings given for R and R¹, respectively, in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that at least one of these groups contains one or more alkoxycarbonyl groups,

is subjected to alkaline saponification and subsequently, if desired, the basic carboxylic acid is liberated by treatment with a dilute organic or inorganic acid, or

i) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein at least one of the groups R and R¹ contains one or more amino groups,

an acylamine of general formula



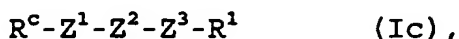
wherein

Z¹, Z² and Z³ are defined as in claims 1 to 6, R^b and R^{1b} have the meanings given in claims 1 to 6 for R and R¹, respectively, with the proviso that R^b is substituted by an acetylamino, propionylamino, cycloalkanecarbonylamino or benzoylamino group and/or R^{1b} is substituted by an acetylamino, propionylamino or benzoylamino group, is subjected to acid hydrolysis, or

- 182 -

j) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein the group R contains one or two primary or secondary amino groups,

a compound of general formula

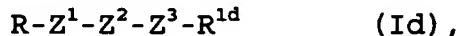


wherein

R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are defined as in claims 1 to 6 and R^c has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that this group contains one or two primary or secondary amino groups which are substituted by a tert.alkoxy-carbonyl group, is subjected to acid hydrolysis, or

k) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the carbonyl group, Z^2 denotes the group $-(CH_2)_2-$ and the group R^1 denotes a phenyl group which carries a tertiary amino group in the 4 position relative to the point of attachment but may otherwise be substituted as described in claims 1 to 6,

a compound of general formula



wherein

R is defined as in claims 1 to 6, Z^1 and Z^3 each denote the carbonyl group, Z^2 denotes the group $-(CH_2)_2-$ and the group R^{1d} denotes a phenyl group which carries a nucleophilically exchangeable function in the 4 position

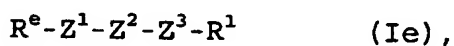
- 183 -

relative to the point of attachment, but may otherwise be substituted as described in claims 1 to 6,

is nucleophilically substituted with a corresponding amine or

l) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein the group R is uniformly mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by an aminocarbonyl, alkylaminocarbonyl or dialkylaminocarbonyl group,

a compound of general formula



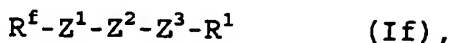
wherein

the group R^e has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6 with the proviso that it is mono-, di- or trisubstituted in the carbon skeleton by the carboxy group, and R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are defined as in claims 1 to 6,

is coupled with ammonia or a corresponding alkylamine or dialkylamine, or

m) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein the group R is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an acetylamino group or in the carbon skeleton by an acetylamino group and at the same time is substituted at one of the aza-nitrogen atoms by an acetyl group,

a compound of general formula



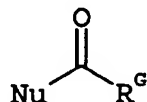
wherein

- 184 -

R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are defined as in claims 1 to 6 and the group R^f has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an amino group, is acylated or

n) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein the group R is defined as in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an acetylamino, propionylamino, cycloalkanecarbonylamino or benzoylamino group,

a compound of general formula

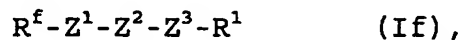


(XIV),

wherein

R^g denotes a methyl, ethyl, cycloalkyl or phenyl group and Nu denotes a leaving group

is coupled with a compound of general formula



wherein

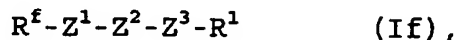
R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are defined as in claims 1 to 6 and the group R^f has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an amino group, or

o) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein

- 185 -

the group R is defined as in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an aminocarbonylamino group,

a compound of general formula



wherein

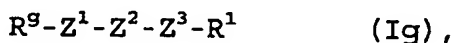
R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are defined as in claims 1 to 6 and the group R^f has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by an amino group,

is reacted with cyanic acid, or

p) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein the group R is defined as in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that it is substituted by an aminomethyl group in the carbon skeleton, and

Z^2 has the meanings given in claims 1 to 6 with the exception of the group $-CH=CH-$,

a compound of general formula



wherein

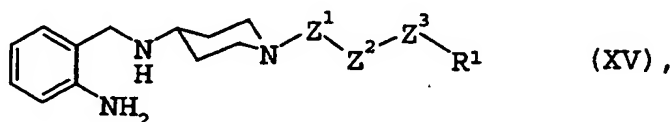
R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are defined as in claims 1 to 6 and the group R^g has the meanings given for R in claims 1 to 6, with the proviso that it is substituted in the carbon skeleton by a nitrile group,

is catalytically hydrogenated, or

- 186 -

q) in order to prepare a compound of general formula I wherein R is the 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-thioxoquinazolin-3-yl]-1-piperidinyl or 4-[3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-cyanoiminoquinazolin-3-yl]-1-piperidinyl group,

a diamine of general formula



wherein

R^1 , Z^1 , Z^2 and Z^3 are defined as in claims 1 to 6,

is reacted with N,N'-thiocarbonyldiimidazole or cyanoimino-diphenylcarbonate and

subsequently, if desired, a compound of general formula I thus obtained which contains a C=C double bond is resolved into the geometric isomers thereof, and/or

a racemate of general formula I thus obtained is resolved into its isomers and/or

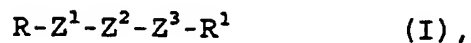
a compound of general formula I thus obtained which contains an acid or basic function is converted into the salts thereof.

Fetherstonhaugh & Co.
Ottawa, Canada
Patent Agents

THIS PAGE RI ANK (ISPTO)

Abstract

The present invention relates to compounds of general formula



wherein

R, R¹ and Z¹ to Z³ are defined as in claim 1, the tautomers, the diastereomers, the enantiomers, the mixtures thereof and the salts thereof, particularly the physiologically acceptable salts thereof with inorganic or organic acids or bases, which have valuable pharmacological properties, particularly CGRP-antagonistic properties, pharmaceutical compositions containing these compounds, their use and processes for preparing them.

THIS PAGE IS BLANK (USPTO)